

# Pali Text Society

Translation Series, No. 34

## DISCOURSE ON ELEMENTS

(Dhātukathā)

THE THIRD BOOK OF THE ABHIDHAMMA PIṬAKA

A Translation  
with  
Charts and Explanation  
by

U NĀRADA  
MŪLA PAṬṬHĀNA SAYADAW  
(OF RANGOON, BURMA)

ORIGINATOR OF ABHIDHAMMA CHARTS

Assisted by

THEIN NYUN

Published by  
The Pali Text Society  
Lancaster  
2007

This electronic version is published under the terms of the Creative Commons Attribution-Non Commercial 3.0 license (CC BY-NC 3.0) as found here:  
<http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-nc/3.0/>

All copyright is owned by the Pali Text Society.

See also the statement under <http://www.palitext.com/> → Publications → Copyright Announcement.

For non-commercial use only.

Scanned by [www.abhidhamma.ru](http://www.abhidhamma.ru)

Typeset by [www.abhidhamma.com](http://www.abhidhamma.com), October 2019

This is version no. 20210531.

First published	1962
Reprinted	1977
Reprinted	1995
Reprinted	1999
Reprinted	2007
Converted to pdf	October 2019

Copyright Pali Text Society 1962, 2007

ISBN 0 86013 025 8

EAN 9780 86013 025 3

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic or mechanical, including photocopying, recording or any information storage and retrieval system, without prior permission in writing from the Pali Text Society, c/o Gazelle, White Cross Mills, Hightown, Lancaster LA1 4XS, U.K.

Printed in Great Britain by Antony Rowe Ltd, Chippenham, Wiltshire



# Editorial note

This is a digital reproduction of “Discourse on Elements”, a translation of the Dhātukathā—the third book of the Abhidhamma—by U Nārada, assisted by Thein Nyun, which was first published in 1962.

While I tried to be as faithful to the original as possible, some changes were introduced:

- The corrigenda were merged into the text.
- The numbering of items was harmonized.
- Pali terms were italicized.
- Obvious oversights were corrected.
- Abbreviations were expanded where space allowed.
- The Pali Diacritic letter “ṁ” (not much in use any longer) was changed to “ṃ”.

The pagination of the original PTS edition can be found on the margins. Unless the page begins on a new paragraph, a vertical bar indicates the beginning of the new page.

Lots of thanks go to Ariya Baumann for the proofreading!

Please mail errors to [verein@abhidhamma.de](mailto:verein@abhidhamma.de).

Manfred Wierich  
Hamburg  
October 2019



# Contents

<b>Foreword by Miss I.B. Horner</b>	<b>vii</b>
<b>Preface by Thein Nyun</b>	<b>ix</b>
<b>Introduction by U Nārada</b>	<b>xxxvii</b>
<b>The Treatment of the Text</b>	<b>1</b>
I. Methods . . . . .	1
II. Internal States of Enquiry . . . . .	2
III. Principles of the Methods . . . . .	3
IV. Characteristics of the Methods . . . . .	3
V. External States of Enquiry . . . . .	3
<b>I. Classification and Unclassification</b>	<b>5</b>
1. Aggregates . . . . .	5
2. Bases . . . . .	8
3. Elements . . . . .	10
4. Truths . . . . .	11
5. Faculties . . . . .	13
6. Dependent Origination and so on . . . . .	15
7. Triplets 22 . . . . .	18
8. Couplets 100 . . . . .	23
Explanation of the Method and Chart of Chapter I . . . . .	34
Internal Tables ( <i>Abhantara Mātikā</i> ) . . . . .	43
External Tables ( <i>Bāhira Mātikā</i> ) . . . . .	52

I. Triplets 22 ( <i>Tika</i> 22) . . . . .	52
II. Couplets 100 ( <i>Duka</i> 100) . . . . .	60
<b>II. Classified and Unclassified</b>	<b>85</b>
8 Questions and Answers . . . . .	85
Mnemonic . . . . .	86
Explanation of the Method and Chart of Chapter II . . . . .	87
<b>III. Unclassified and Classified</b>	<b>95</b>
12 Questions and Answers . . . . .	95
Mnemonic . . . . .	98
Explanation of the Method and Chart of Chapter III . . . . .	98
<b>IV. Classified and Classified</b>	<b>103</b>
2 Questions and Answers . . . . .	103
Mnemonic . . . . .	104
Explanation of the Method and Chart of Chapter IV . . . . .	104
<b>V. Unclassified and Unclassified</b>	<b>109</b>
35 Questions and Answers . . . . .	109
Triplets . . . . .	112
Couplets . . . . .	113
Mnemonic . . . . .	117
Explanation of the Method and Chart of Chapter V . . . . .	118
<b>VI. Association and Dissociation</b>	<b>123</b>
78 Questions and Answers . . . . .	123
1. Aggregates . . . . .	123
1. Bases . . . . .	124
3. Elements . . . . .	124
4. Truths and so on . . . . .	124
5. Triplets . . . . .	128
6. Couplets . . . . .	131
Mnemonic . . . . .	137
Explanation of the Method and Chart of Chapter VI . . . . .	137
The Chart . . . . .	140



<b>VII. Associated and Dissociated</b>	<b>149</b>
11 Questions and Answers . . . . .	149
Mnemonic . . . . .	151
Explanation of the Method and Chart of Chapter VII . . . .	151
<b>VIII. Dissociated and Associated</b>	<b>155</b>
2 Questions and Answers . . . . .	155
Mnemonic . . . . .	155
Explanation of the Methods and Charts of Chapters VIII and XIV . . . . .	156
<b>IX. Associated and Associated</b>	<b>159</b>
34 Questions and Answers . . . . .	159
Triplets . . . . .	162
Couplets . . . . .	162
Mnemonic . . . . .	164
Explanation of the Method and Chart of Chapter IX . . . .	164
<b>X. Dissociated and Dissociated</b>	<b>167</b>
56 Questions and Answers . . . . .	167
Triplets . . . . .	169
Couplets . . . . .	172
Mnemonic . . . . .	176
Explanation of the Method and Chart of Chapter X . . . . .	176
<b>XI. Associated with, and Dissociated from, the Classified</b>	<b>179</b>
8 Questions and Answers . . . . .	179
Mnemonic . . . . .	181
Explanation of the Method and Chart of Chapter XI . . . .	182
<b>XII. Classified and Unclassified Concerning the Associated</b>	<b>185</b>
31 Questions and Answers . . . . .	185
Triplets . . . . .	188
Couplets . . . . .	188
Mnemonic . . . . .	190
Explanation of the Method and Chart of Chapter XII . . . .	190

<b>XIII. Associated with, and Dissociated from, the Unclassified</b>	<b>193</b>
8 Questions and Answers . . . . .	193
Triplets . . . . .	194
Couplets . . . . .	195
Mnemonic . . . . .	197
Explanation of the Method and Chart of Chapter XIII . . .	197
<b>XIV. Classified and Unclassified Concerning the Dissociated</b>	<b>199</b>
63 Questions and Answers . . . . .	199
1. Aggregates and so on . . . . .	199
2. Truths and so on . . . . .	200
3. Seven Contact Group . . . . .	202
4. Triplets . . . . .	203
5. Couplets . . . . .	207
Mnemonic . . . . .	212
<b>Charts</b>	<b>213</b>

# Foreword

During recent years non-Pali readers anxious to study Early Buddhism have taken an interest, which is still growing, in the Theravāda Abhidhamma tradition. But requests for works of this nature have been impossible to meet adequately. In the first place Mrs. Rhys Davids's very valuable *A Buddhist Manual of Psychological Ethics* (*Dhammasaṅgaṇī*), published under the patronage of the Royal Asiatic Society, 1st ed. 1900, 2nd ed. 1923, with S.Z. Aung's *Points of Controversy*, 1915 (PTS), reprinted 1961, and B.C. Law's *Designation of Human Types* (*Puggalapaññatti*), 1922 (PTS), had all long been out of print. In any case these two latter hardly present the core of the Abhidhamma teaching, which is a systematic arrangement and treatment, with elaborate classifications, of the physical and mental elements and processes it analyses and regards as "real" in the highest or absolute sense. Secondly, if one excepts the *Abhidhammatthasaṅgaha*, translated as *Compendium of Philosophy*, 1910, reprinted 1956 (PTS), these are, as far as I know, the only Pali Abhidhamma works to have been rendered into English in their entirety. p. vii

Therefore it was a pleasant surprise when a learned Sayadaw wrote from Rangoon offering the PTS a translation of the *Dhātukathā*, the third book of the Abhidhamma-Piṭaka. I accepted this timely proposal with gratitude and confidence, both because the desirability of adding a translation of an essentially Abhidhamma work to the PTS's list of publications was obvious, and because I was already aware of the Sayadaw's reputation for erudition and scholarship in this partic-

ular field of studies of which Burma has been the home and center for centuries.

In translating the present comparatively short but important work and clarifying its highly compressed classifications by the use of charts and explanations accompanying the charts U Nārada, Mūla Paṭṭhāna Sayadaw (Originator of the Abhidhamma Charts) has been assisted by U Thein Nyun of Rangoon. Thus they have, as Mrs. Rhys Davids wrote of another contributor in her Introductory Note to *Buddhadatta's Manuals*, “rendered a service of no slight value to the study of that Abhidhamma tradition which has survived, in Theravāda Buddhism, to the present day”.

I.B. Horner.  
London, 1961.

## Note

- p. viii Translations of Abhidhamma works published by PTS since 1961:
- Conditional Relations (*Paṭṭhāna*) by U. Nārada, 1969
  - The Book of Analysis (*Vibhaṅga*) by U. Thiṭṭila, 1969
  - A Buddhist Manual of Psychological Ethics (*Dhammasaṅgaṇī*) by Mrs. Rhys Davids, 3rd. edn., 1974

I.B.H.  
London, 1976

# Preface

It is extremely difficult for one to become a Supremely Enlightened Buddha. First of all one must have qualified oneself to receive the prediction from a living Buddha. This, too, is difficult because the following eight conditions have to be satisfied: p. ix

1. That one is a human being. (It is not possible for a Deva or a Brahmā to become a Buddha.)
2. That one is a man. (It is not possible for a woman, a hermaphrodite and so on who do not possess the 32 bodily signs of a great man.)
3. That the inherent qualities of Arahatsip have already been acquired in the existence when the prediction was made.
4. That one meets with a living Enlightened Buddha. (The wish cannot be fulfilled if it is made to an Enlightened Buddha who has passed away, to a Silent Buddha, to an Arahatsip or at a pagoda.)
5. That one is a Bhikkhu or, if a hermit, one who has perfect confidence in *kamma*. (The wish to become an Enlightened Buddha made by an ordinary person will not be fulfilled.)
6. That one has acquired the 8 attainments and 5 supernormal powers. (One who has not acquired these attainments and powers is not able to examine and select the perfections to be practised.)
7. That one is ready to give up one's life to the Enlightened Buddha.
8. That one has the dominant desire to practise and attain the per-

fections which are necessary for becoming an Enlightened Buddha.

With regard to the last condition, the nature of that desire can be understood from the following examples: If it is heard that one can become an Enlightened Buddha by:

1. Swimming from one end to another of a world system filled with water, or
2. walking from one end to another of a world system filled with live coals, or
3. walking from one end to another of a world system filled with spears that pierce through the feet, or
- p. x 4. going from one end to another of a world system of a thick and entangled forest of bamboo groves and creepers of thorns, or
5. suffering torment in hell for 4 incalculable æons and 100,000 world periods,

there will be no thought of the immensity of the task or the extreme hardship but only the desire to undertake the feat without a moment's hesitation.

After the prediction, the Buddha-to-be has to practise and attain the ten perfections of charity, virtue and so on for the minimum period of 4 incalculable æons and 100,000 world periods in order to become the Enlightened Buddha. He has to undergo all kinds of hardship in practising them for the purification of his mind, passing innumerable times from one existence to another and from one world to another. As a result he acquires perfect knowledge of both matter and mind.

\* \* \*

## **Buddha's Perfect Knowledge of the Material World**

It is abundantly clear from the expositions concerning matter in the Abhidhamma and the Suttas that the Buddha had perfect knowledge of the material world which, out of His boundless compassion for all beings, He expounded for their welfare and prosperity.

In the Nāṇa-Vibhaṅga of the Abhidhamma the Buddha revealed his profound knowledge of the nature of all kinds of elements. Here are a few extracts concerning inanimate things. When the Buddha saw a tree He could tell what predominant elements caused

1. the trunk to be white, black or uniform in colour;
2. the bark to be thick or thin;
3. the flowers to be red, yellow, brown or white in colour and their scent to be good or bad;
4. the fruits to be small, big, long or round in shape; their interior good, fine or coarse; their odour good or bad and their taste sweet, sour, hot or astringent;
5. the thorns to be sharp, blunt, straight or crooked and red, black, brown or white and so on in colour.

The Piṭakas also speak of the Buddha's perfect knowledge of matter.

\* \* \*

## **Buddha's Perfect Knowledge of the Mind**

There are numerous accounts in the Vinaya, Sutta and Abhidhamma Piṭakas of the Buddha's perfect knowledge of the mind. The sole purpose of His teaching was to reveal the methods for the destruction of unwholesome states such as greed, hatred and delusion and the overcoming of the five hindrances so that beings would become purified in mind and thereby attain release from the suffering due to existence. p. xi

\* \* \*

## **The Abhidhamma was Expounded by the Buddha**

The Abhidhamma is so abstruse, profound and subtle that only Enlightened Buddhas are able to give a complete exposition of it because of their Omniscience in three respects:

1. Perfect knowledge of all the things knowable which are
  - (a) conditioned;
  - (b) subject to change;
  - (c) characteristics or qualities of things;
  - (d) Nibbāna, and
  - (e) concepts.
2. Perfect knowledge of the various kinds of expositions for teaching the above in detail.
3. Perfect knowledge of all beings who are worthy or unworthy of instruction for deliverance, *i.e.*:
  - (a) The nature of the minds in past existences. The Buddha knew who held the eternalist and annihilationist views or who held right views and practised to attain insight-knowledge;
  - (b) the predominant nature of the minds in past existences. The Buddha knew that it was because of the predominance of greed, anger or delusion in the past that a particular being is greedy, easily roused to anger or dull and distracted in his present existence. Similarly for those who are non-greedy, amiable or intelligent;
  - (c) the unwholesome tendencies that lie dormant in beings. The Buddha knew which of the following seven tendencies were predominant in a being:
    - i. sensual craving;
    - ii. anger;
    - iii. conceit;
    - iv. wrong views;
    - v. doubt;
    - vi. craving for higher existence, and
    - vii. ignorance;
  - (d) the of the mind to dwell on objects boldly and freely. This delight is similar to that of deer to roam the forest or fish to live in water. The Buddha knew who delights in which particular sense object;
  - (e) the traits inherited as the result of repetition in past exis-



tences. The Buddha knew who had the traits of lust, harsh speech and so on, and the appropriate teaching to be expounded. Although the Arahats have destroyed the defilements they cannot overcome their traits. It is only the Buddha who destroys the traits together with the defilements;

- (f) the habits formed in the present existence. These habits may be acquired from parents and companions just like contagious diseases. Environment plays a great part in the formation of habits. They are of six types:
- i. lust;
  - ii. anger;
  - iii. delusion;
  - iv. applied thought;
  - v. faith;
  - vi. intelligence.

The Buddha knew the particular type of habit of a being and the proper teaching and meditation to be given;

- (g) the good deeds that were performed in past existences. The Buddha knew the kinds of good deeds performed by a being and the right kind of teaching to be given for deliverance;
- (h) the deeds done in past existences with the sole purpose of attaining release from suffering. These consist of the 10 perfections. The Buddha knew the level a being had attained in regard to them.

\* \* \*

## Methods of Teaching

There are the Sutta and Abhidhamma methods of Teaching. In the Sutta method, the inclinations and mental status of the audience are considered by the Buddha. Will this person quickly realize the Four Noble Truths by an exposition of the Teaching on the aggregates, or

p. xiii the bases or the elements? If it is to be on the aggregates, will it be necessary to give the exposition briefly or at length? When this has been decided, the mental disposition of the being in past existences is taken into account and the appropriate Teaching | expounded. This Sutta method on the aggregates, bases and elements is to be found in the Saṃyutta Nikāya. In this method the Buddha does not have the opportunity to display His Enlightened Knowledge.

In the Abhidhamma method, no attention is paid to the individual but only to the facts about the nature of the ultimate truths as fully comprehended by Enlightened Knowledge. And even then only the Paṭṭhāna gives the widest and fullest scope for this. The Abhidhamma is presented in technical language where the philosophical terms, denoting ultimate truths, are defined and explained. The Suttas are presented in conventional language though philosophical terms are included. So a good knowledge of the Abhidhamma is essential for grasping the true significance of the Teaching of the Suttas. Therefore it must be studied before the latter so that a deeper and clearer knowledge of them may be gained.

\* \* \*

## **The Abhidhamma was Expounded in the Deva World**

In the Abhidhamma the triplets and couplets, which precede the exposition of the Dhammasaṅgaṇī, form its framework for analytical and relational treatment in a systematic manner. At the very beginning the Dhammasaṅgaṇī deals with the first triplet, “States which are wholesome, unwholesome and indeterminate”, but the exposition about them is completed only in Paṭṭhāna, the end of the Abhidhamma. Therefore, in order to give a complete picture of Abhidhamma it has to be expounded from the beginning to the end to the same audience at one sitting lasting for three months. Only Devas and Brahmās are capable of remaining in one posture for that length

of time and this is why the Buddha expounded the Abhidhamma in Tāvatiṃsa, the abode of the 33 Devas.

\* \* \*

## The Abhidhamma is Abstruse, Profound and Subtle

The Abhidhamma Teaching, revealed by Enlightened Knowledge is abstruse, profound and subtle. The first chapter on the “Risings of Consciousness” in the Dhammasaṅgaṇī, which was expounded first, states:

“Whenever a wholesome consciousness belonging to the sensuous plane has arisen, which is accompanied by joy and associated with knowledge and has as its object, sight, sound, smell, taste, tangible object, cognizable object, or whatever, on that occasion there is:

p. xiv

- |                             |   |  |
|-----------------------------|---|--|
| 1. Contact                  | } | Contact group of 5 ( <i>phassa-pañcaka</i> ) |
| 2. Feeling                  |   |  |
| 3. Perception               |   |  |
| 4. Volition                 |   |  |
| 5. Consciousness            |   |  |
| 6. Applied Thought          | } | Factors of jhāna ( <i>jhānaṅga</i> )         |
| 7. Sustained Thought        |   |  |
| 8. Rapture                  |   |  |
| 9. Bliss                    |   |  |
| 10. One-pointedness of mind |   |  |

- |                              |   |   |
|------------------------------|---|---|
| 11. Faculty of Faith         | } | Faculties ( <i>indriya</i> )                      |
| 12. Faculty of Energy        |   |   |
| 13. Faculty of Mindfulness   |   |   |
| 14. Faculty of Concentration |   |   |
| 15. Faculty of Wisdom        |   |   |
| 16. Faculty of Mind          |   |   |
| 17. Faculty of Mental Joy    |   |   |
| 18. Faculty of Vitality      |   |   |
| 19. Right Understanding      | } | Path factors ( <i>maggaṅga</i> )                  |
| 20. Right Thought            |   |   |
| 21. Right Effort             |   |   |
| 22. Right Mindfulness        |   |   |
| 23. Right Concentration      | } | Strengths ( <i>bala</i> )                         |
| 24. Power of Faith           |   |   |
| 25. Power of Energy          |   |   |
| 26. Power of Mindfulness     |   |   |
| 27. Power of Concentration   |   |   |
| 28. Power of Wisdom          |   |   |
| 29. Power of Shame           |   |   |
| 30. Power of Fear            | } | Wholesome roots ( <i>kusala-mūla</i> )            |
| 31. Non-greed                |   |   |
| 32. Non-hatred               |   |   |
| 33. Non-delusion             | } | Wholesome action ( <i>kusala-kamma</i> )          |
| 34. Non-avarice              |   |   |
| 35. Non-ill will             | } | The guardians of the world<br>( <i>lokapāla</i> ) |
| 36. Right Understanding      |   |   |
| 37. Shame                    |   |   |
| 38. Fear                     |   |   |

- p. xv
- |  |                                  |   |
|--|----------------------------------|---|
| <p>39. Tranquillity of Mental factors</p> <p>40. Tranquillity of Consciousness</p> <p>41. Agility of Mental factors</p> <p>42. Agility of Consciousness</p> <p>43. Pliancy of Mental factors</p> <p>44. Pliancy of Consciousness</p> <p>45. Adaptability of Mental factors</p> <p>46. Adaptability of Consciousness</p> <p>47. Proficiency of Mental factors</p> <p>48. Proficiency of Consciousness</p> <p>49. Uprightness of Mental factors</p> <p>50. Uprightness of Consciousness</p> <p>51. Mindfulness</p> <p>52. Clear Comprehension</p> <p>53. Tranquillity</p> <p>54. Insight</p> <p>55. Determination</p> <p>56. Undistractedness”</p> | <p style="font-size: 4em;">}</p> | <p>The Six Pairs (<i>yugaḷaka</i>)</p>                  |
| <p>51. Mindfulness</p> <p>52. Clear Comprehension</p>  | <p style="font-size: 4em;">}</p> | <p>The Helpers (<i>upakāra</i>)</p>                     |
| <p>53. Tranquillity</p> <p>54. Insight</p>   | <p style="font-size: 4em;">}</p> | <p>The Pairwise Combination<br/>(<i>yuganandha</i>)</p> |
| <p>55. Determination</p> <p>56. Undistractedness”</p>  | <p style="font-size: 4em;">}</p> | <p>The Last Dyad (<i>piṭṭhi-duka</i>)</p>               |

According to this, the mental factors arise together with consciousness at the moment when one of the six objects, say visible object, is taken. Although they arise together each exhibits its own characteristic and carries out its own function. For instance, consciousness exhibits its characteristic of being aware of an object, contact that of touch and feeling that of experiencing the object. These mental factors always

1. arise together with consciousness,
2. cease together with consciousness,
3. take the same object as consciousness,
4. have the same base as consciousness.

These are their four characteristics of association with consciousness as mentioned in the Explanation to [Chapter VI](#) of the Dhātukathā.

This will now be explained further. First of all, since consciousness must be aware of an object, it cannot arise without an object. This is in accordance with the object-condition of the Paṭṭhāna. In the case when consciousness does not arise as in sleep there is the arising and ceasing of the mental life-continuum which takes as object either a good or evil action (*kamma*), a sign of good or evil volition (*kamma-nimitta*) or a sign of destiny (*gati-nimitta*). It is the object that was taken at the time of death in the previous existence. There are many accounts of this mental life-continuum such as “*Bhavaṅgaṃ āvajjanāya*” and so on in the Paṭṭhāna. So when wholesome consciousness arises as the result of taking a visible object, the statement given above:

1. The mental factors arise together with that consciousness is in accordance with the co-nascence, mutuality, support, association, presence and non-disappearance conditions of the Paṭṭhāna where it is stated that “The four mental aggregates are related to one another by way of co-nascence condition” and so on.
2. The mental factors cease together with consciousness. Consciousness lasts for 3 momentary phases, nascent, static and ceasing. So the mental factors, which arise together with con-

sciousness, also last for the same time and cease together with it. Only when one group of consciousness and mental factors ceases can another arise. It is stated in the Truth, Mental Formation, States and Faculty chapters of the Yamaka and in the proximity condition of Paṭṭhāna that a process of arisings and ceasings of these mental groups take place which is in accordance with their nature. Therefore, the wholesome consciousness together with the mental factors which arise as the result of taking a visible object is only a part of this mental process. The complete process consists of

- (a) vibrating of the life-continuum;
- (b) arrest of the life-continuum;
- (c) 5 sense-door advertence;
- (d) eye consciousness;
- (e) recipient consciousness;
- (f) investigating consciousness;
- (g) determining consciousness;
- (h) seven successive wholesome impulses, and
- (i) two successive moments of registering consciousness.

The first wholesome impulse of the seven in the process is related to the second by way of proximity, contiguity, decisive support, frequency, absence, disappearance conditions of the Paṭṭhāna. Thus the first impulse of the consciousness and mental factors brings about the conditions for the second impulse to arise. When this happens, the first impulse has ceased and the second is present. It is the same with the remaining impulses.

Except in the non-percepted plane of existence and at the time of the Attainment of Cessation while alive (*Nirodhasamāpatti*), *i.e.* on those occasions when there is suspension of consciousness and mental factors, the groups of consciousness and mental factors in the remaining 30 planes of existence are always arising and ceasing and immediately following one another by way of proximity and other conditions. This goes on from one existence to another, from one world to another. At the end of

one existence the ceasing of the death-consciousness is immediately followed by the arising of rebirth-consciousness without any intervening period of time. And in the new existence the groups of consciousness and mental factors which arise as the result of taking different objects, succeed one another so long as the round of rebirths is not ended. This also holds true even in the case of the living Arahant who has not attained final extinction (*parinibbāna*). It is only with death-consciousness of the Arahant that the proximity condition no longer functions; for since no new mental group will ever arise again, there is no more rebirth in any plane of existence, *i.e.* materiality and mentality will never manifest themselves again.

3. The mental factors take the same object as consciousness. The visible object taken by consciousness is taken also by the mental factors which arise together with that consciousness. This is the same for all the other five objects. A detailed account of these objects is given in the object-condition of the Paṭṭhāna.
4. The mental factors have the same base as consciousness. In the 4 immaterial existences and the non-percepted existence rebirth can be avoided by the practise of mental culture; but in the remaining 26 planes of existence the consciousness and mental factors cannot arise without a physical base. For example, eye-consciousness is dependent on the eye-base, ear-consciousness on the ear-base and so on for the other sense-consciousnesses. Thus, excluding the 4 types of immaterial resultant consciousness, the mind element and the remaining 72 types of mind-consciousness can only arise in dependence on the heart-base. The fact that consciousness and mental factors arise dependent on the six bases is to be found in the Paṭṭhāna under support, pre-nascence, faculty, dissociation, presence and non-disappearance conditions. There it is stated that “the eye-base is related to eye-consciousness, ear-base is related to ear-consciousness ... bodily consciousness, physical base is related to wholesome states, physical base is related to unwholesome



states, physical base is related to resultant indeterminate, inoperative indeterminate states” by way of the above conditions.

\* \* \*

## **The Base Specified as Heart-Base in the Commentaries**

The physical base mentioned above in the support condition and others of the Paṭṭhāna is not specified as heart-base. There is no dispute about the locations of eye-base, ear-base, etc., but only about the location of the physical base on which the mind-element and mind-consciousness are dependent. Does it reside in the brain, lung, heart or anywhere else in the human system? The commentaries state that in the centre of the heart there is a cavity the size of the hollow of a *punnaga* seed (the Alexandrian laurel tree) which is filled with blood spread throughout which is the physical base. Its specific locality, therefore, is designated as the heart base. p. xviii

\* \* \*

## **The Base is not Expounded in the Dhammasaṅgaṇī**

Why was this physical base of mind-consciousness which was expounded by the Buddha in the Paṭṭhāna not expounded in the Dhammasaṅgaṇī? The reason is that the symmetry of the twofold classification of object-couplets would not be upheld. In the materiality section of the Dhammasaṅgaṇī, where the table of contents is laid down by means of unitary, twofold and so on up to elevenfold classification, it is stated in the twofold classification on base-couplets that “There is materiality (eye-base) which is the base of eye-consciousness. There is materiality (all materiality except eye-base) which is not the base of

eye-consciousness”. Similar statements are also made for the remaining 4 bases of ear-consciousness and so on up to bodily-consciousness. But there is no mention of the twofold classification of the sixth base which would have to be stated as follows:

“There is materiality which is the base of mind-consciousness. There is materiality which is not the base of mind-consciousness”.

If this had been done, the physical base, specified as heart-base in the commentaries, would be inferred.

With regard to the object-couplet, which comes after the base-couplet, similar statements are also made:

“There is materiality (visible-object) which is the object of eye-consciousness. There is materiality (all materiality except visible-object) which is not the object of ear-consciousness”

and so on up to bodily-consciousness. But the twofold classification that:

p. xix

“There is materiality (all | materiality) which is the object of mind-consciousness. There is materiality which is not the object of mind-consciousness”

is not included, because since all materiality, without exception, is the object of mind-consciousness, the second part is not admissible. Hence this sixth twofold classification of object-couplets is excluded, or there would have been 6 twofold classifications for base-couplets and 5 for object-couplets. The symmetry would have been lost and those who were being instructed confused. Therefore, the sixth twofold classification of base-couplets was left out, but not because there is no physical base of mind element and mind-consciousness.

The above gives an idea of the perfect knowledge of the general characteristics of consciousness and mental factors and of their individual characteristics, functions and so on which is realized only by

the Enlightened Buddha. The Elder Nāgasena in the *Milinda-pañha*<sup>1</sup> gives an illustration to point out how extremely difficult it is to attain such knowledge:

THE ELDER: A hard thing there is, O King, which the Blessed One has done.

MILINDA: And what is that?

THE ELDER: The fixing of all those mental groups which depend on one organ of sense, telling us that such is contact, such is feeling, and such perception, and such volition and such consciousness.

MILINDA: Give me an illustration.

THE ELDER: Suppose, O King, a man were to wade down into the ocean and, taking some water in the palm of his hand, were to taste it with his tongue. Could he distinguish whether it were water from the Ganges, Yamunā, Aciravātī, Sarabhū or from the Mahī?

MILINDA: Impossible! Sir.

THE ELDER: More difficult than that, great King, is it to have distinguished between the mental groups which follow on the exercise of any one of the organs of sense.

\* \* \*

## The Methods of Exposition in the Abhidhamma

The Abhidhamma cannot be understood without knowing the methods of the exposition. In expounding it the Buddha provided | these p. xx wherever necessary. For instance, in the Dhammasaṅgaṇī each type of consciousness is classified, e.g.

“Now, on that occasion, the aggregates are four, the bases are two and the elements are two”.

---

<sup>1</sup>P. 133.

This method is then applied to the classification of states under aggregates, bases and elements in the [first chapter](#) of the Dhātukathā and the four subsequent chapters are based on the method of this chapter. In this manner the Buddha provided methods right up to Paṭṭhāna. Here the subject is treated in numerous ways but the methods are always given. Therefore, the Abhidhamma, unlike the Sutta and Vinaya, must be studied under a teacher who is conversant with the methods. The translator of this text was the first to devise charts of the Abhidhamma for easy understanding. In fact the Paṭṭhāna, in the form of charts, is being easily studied at present in different parts of Burma. In this connection the author suggests that the Pali Text Society publish charts of its “Compendium of Philosophy” as an aid to the proper understanding of this text. It is believed that by doing so it will become a much more popular publication.

\* \* \*

## Discourses on the Elements

The Buddha’s discourses on the elements, besides being found in the Dhātukathā, occur also in other Texts of the Abhidhamma Piṭaka such as the Dhātu-Vibhaṅga and Dhātu-Yamaka of the Vibhaṅga and Yamaka Texts respectively. They are also contained in such Sutta Piṭaka passages as Dhātu-Manasikāra in the Mahā-Satipaṭṭhāna Sutta of the Dīgha and Majjhima Nikāyas; in the Mahā-Hatthipadopama, Dhātu-Vibhaṅga and Rāhulovāda Suttas of the Majjhima and in the Dhātu-Saṃyutta of the Saṃyutta. The treatment of the elements in each of these discourses is briefly as follows:

### 1. Dhātu-Vibhaṅga of Abhidhamma Vibhaṅga.

This chapter consists of the Sutta, Abhidhamma and Catechism Sections.

- (a) The Sutta Section deals with three sets of 6 elements making a total of 18. They are
  - i. earth, wind, heat, water, space and consciousness;
  - ii. pleasant feeling, painful feeling, mental joy, grief, indifferent feeling and ignorance;

- iii. lust, ill will, cruelty, renunciation, non-ill will, non-cruelty.
  - (b) The Abhidhamma Section deals with the kind and nature of the 18 elements. p. xxi
  - (c) The Catechism Section deals, in detail, with questions and answers on the elements that are wholesome, unwholesome and indeterminate and so on in accordance with the classifications of the 22 triplets and 100 couplets.
2. Dhātu-Yamaka of Abhidhamma Yamaka.

This chapter consists of Sections on Terms, Process and Penetration.

- (a) *Terms*: The 18 elements are dealt with in this section in the following form of question and answer:
  - i. Is that which is called eye also called eye-element?  
The Divine Eye and the Eye of Wisdom are called eye but they are not called eye-element. The eye-element is called eye as well as eye-element.
  - ii. Is that which is called eye-element also called eye?  
That which is called eye-element is also called eye.
- (b) *Process*: 11 elements (excluding sound-element, eye-consciousness, ear-consciousness, nose-consciousness, tongue-consciousness, body-consciousness and mind element of the present existence) which arise at birth and death are dealt with in the following form of question to which the answer is provided.  
When the eye-element arises in a person, does the ear-element also arise? This is with reference not only to the person as above but also to existence and both person and existence at six periods of time, the present, past, future, present and past, present and future, past and future.
- (c) *Penetration*: The 18 elements are dealt with in the following form of question to which the answer is provided.  
“Does the person who penetrates the eye-element, also penetrate the ear-element? Does the person who pene-

trates the ear-element also penetrate the eye-element?”  
This is with regard to the six periods of time as above.

3. *Dīgha* and *Majjhima Nikāyas*.

The four elements, earth, heat, water and wind, are dealt with under the contemplation of body in the Mahā-Satipaṭṭhāna Suttas of these two Nikāyas.

p. xxii

4. *Majjhima Nikāya*.

The four elements, earth, heat, water and wind, which are internal and external, are dealt with in detail in the Mahā-Hatthipadopama and Mahā-Rāhulovāda Suttas; and six elements, earth, heat, water, wind, space and consciousness are dealt with in Dhātu-Vibhaṅga Sutta.

5. *Samyutta Nikāya*.

The 18 elements in groups of three such as eye, visible object, eye-consciousness; ear, sound, ear-consciousness, etc. are dealt with to show their diverse natures and as a result of which diverse results are produced. The following is an example taken from the translation by Mrs. Rhys Davids, *Kindred Sayings*<sup>1</sup>:

“The Exalted One said this: ‘What, brethren, is the diversity in elements? The elements of eye, of visible object, of eye-consciousness: the elements of ear, of sound, of ear-consciousness . . . the elements of mind, of cognizable objects, of mind-consciousness; this, brethren, is called diversity in elements.

Because of the diversity in elements, brethren, arises diversity in perceptions; because of diversity in perceptions arises diversity in intentions (aims); because of diversity in intentions (aims) arises diversity in desires; because of diversity in desires arises diversity in distress (yearnings); because of diversity in distress (yearnings) arises diversity in quests”.

Besides these, there are many other discourses on the radiant elements, the lustre elements, the elements of infinity of

---

<sup>1</sup>Vol. ii, pp. 101, 103.

space, infinity of consciousness, nothingness, neither perception nor non-perception, attainment of cessation and so on. The Dhātukathā, however, deals with the classification and non-classification, etc. divided into 14 chapters, of the 22 triplets and 100 couplets, already expounded in the Dhammasaṅgaṇī, and of the of aggregates, bases, and elements, etc. already expounded in the Vibhaṅga.

\* \* \*

## The Elements

An element is defined as that which bears its own intrinsic nature. It cannot be split up or transformed into another. The elements are abstract qualities and as such are empty and void of substance, self, soul, I, being, person and life. Except for Nibbāna, which is permanent and unconditioned, the rest of the elements are the ultimate constituents of all things which are said to be animate and inanimate. These latter elements will be briefly dealt with here. For when one has really grasped their true natures in a practical way for oneself, they will be realized as suffering and given up. Only then will Nibbāna be attained.

p. xxiii

\* \* \*

## The Conditioned Nature of Elements

The elements are not permanently present. They arise to exhibit their own characteristic natures and perform their own characteristic functions when the proper conditions are satisfied, and they cease after their span of duration. Thus no being has any control over the arising and ceasing of the elements and they are not at his mercy or will however mighty and powerful he may be. In other words, the elements have no regard for anyone, show no favour to anyone and do not accede to the wishes of anyone. They are entirely dependent on conditions.

For example, when the four conditions: a visible object, the sense of sight, light and attention, are present, the eye-consciousness element arises. No power can prevent this element from arising when these conditions are present or cause it to arise when one of them is absent.

\* \* \*

## **Elements Are the Ultimate Constituents of Things**

What is conventionally known as a piece of wood consists of eight material elements, earth, heat, wind, water, visibility, odour, taste and nutriment. The sense of touch reveals

1. that it is hard which is the characteristic of the earth<sup>1</sup> element;
2. that it is cold which is the characteristic of the heat element;
3. that it is resistant to the touch which is the characteristic of the wind element.
4. The cohesion of the above three elements is the characteristic of the water element.

p. xxiv

The sense of sight reveals that it is visible which is the characteristic of the visible object element. The sense of odour reveals that it has some odour which is the characteristic of the odour element. The sense of taste reveals that it has a slight taste which is the characteristic of the taste element. And since it has some nutritive value it has the characteristic of the nutriment element.

This piece of wood may be split up into its ultimate components such as protons, electrons, etc., but these still consist of the eight elements.

All things said to be inanimate invariably consist of groups of these eight inseparable material elements. Each carries out its own function but does not assist the other elements in carrying out their

---

<sup>1</sup>The elements are termed earth, wind and water according to popular Abhidhammic usage but they are not to be taken in their literal senses of solid earth, gaseous wind and liquid water.



own functions. However, they are dependent upon one another for their arising in accordance with the co-nascence, mutuality, support, presence and non-disappearance conditions of the Paṭṭhāna.

For example, dependent upon the earth element, the remaining three primary elements, heat, wind and water arise; dependent on the three primary elements, earth, heat and wind, the water element arises; dependent on two primary elements, the remaining two primary elements arise. Again, dependent on the four primary elements, there arise visibility, odour, taste and nutriment, which belong to the twenty-four derived elements of matter aggregate, in accordance with the co-nascence, support, presence and non-disappearance conditions of the Paṭṭhāna.

All things said to be animate consist of material and mental elements comprising

1. 28 material qualities such as the eight inseparable elements given above, the five senses, masculinity, femininity, bodily and verbal intimations;
2. 52 mental factors such as feeling, perception, intention, attention, applied thought, sustained thought, decision, greed, wrong views, conceit, anger, envy, stinginess, worry, restlessness, delusion, shame, fear, faith, mindfulness, non-greed, amity, knowledge, sympathy, and
3. consciousness.

Only the appropriate material and mental elements arise together on each occasion. As said before, only an Enlightened Buddha perceives each one of them at the same time. Others, who know how to observe them practically, perceive only the predominant element. For example, when greed arises in one's continuity other material and mental elements also arise but only greed is observed. It is possible to observe another mental element accompanying greed when it is looked for in succeeding mental groups of greed. When greed, anger or mental joy is predominantly manifested in | another person it is conventionally said that he is greedy, angry or happy. The details about these elements cannot be given here but are to be found in the Abhidhamma.

\* \* \*

## **The Elements are Void of Substance**

The elements, being abstract qualities, are empty and void of substance. Since only these elements really exist, no solid, substantial things are to be found outside them. So, in the ultimate sense, there are no such things but only the abstract elements. But in conventional language it has to be said that inanimate things are made up of eight material elements. Most people, ignorant of the nature of elements, interpret this to mean that substantial inanimate things exist built up of the eight elements. This belief has come about partly owing to a lack of proper knowledge of the consciousness elements.

The 5 sense-consciousness elements and the mind element are conscious of sense objects which are material elements. Mind-consciousness element, however, is conscious of objects of thought which are either of the past, present or future, material or mental, real or imaginary. All these consciousness elements occur in mental processes. A mental process of sense-consciousness element is followed by several mental processes of mind-consciousness element. For example, after the mental process of eye-consciousness element, which can only have a visible object element as object, several mental processes of mind-consciousness element follow: the objects taken separately and in succession are

1. the past visible object element that was taken in parts by eye-consciousness element;
2. the visible object element taken as a whole;
3. the form and associated solid object;
4. the name of the object.

The first and second objects are the true, abstract elements but the third and fourth objects are just concepts and terms respectively. It has to be remembered that visible object element simply carries out its characteristic function of visibility. It does not carry out the function (which is that of mind-consciousness element) of collecting together to give form and solidity. Nor do the elements carry out the function

of naming. Therefore only mind-consciousness element is conscious of the concepts of form, solidity and terms which do not really exist. For, according to Abhidhamma, there are no solid substances, | p. xxvi but only these elements carrying out their characteristic functions. But since they occur in varying degrees and quantities, distinctions are made between the various solid form concepts taken as objects by mind-consciousness element and given names such as tree, mountain, sun, moon, star, etc. The explanation has been unavoidably brief but it should give an idea of how this belief in the existence of a world of inanimate things has come to be accepted. Similarly, living beings, persons, men and women and their names are concepts taken up as objects of mind-consciousness element as the result of the manifestations of material and mental elements that are mere qualities.

\* \* \*

## The Elements Are Void of Attā

When the proper conditions are present, the elements arise and carry out their respective functions. There is no *attā*, i.e. no ego-entity, soul, self, or I, that is independent of these elements and controlling them. The Brahmajāla Sutta describes how this belief in *attā* came about; it then goes on to say that later some heretics took the view that when Mahā-Brahmā created beings he put a part of himself, which they called *attā*, into their bodies; that it was this *attā* which has the characteristic of

1. “doer” because it performs all actions and causes happiness and suffering;
2. “controller” because the physical and mental elements in beings have to accede to its wishes;
3. “independence” because it does not follow the dictates of the physical and mental elements in beings;
4. “ruler” because it governs the physical and mental elements in beings;
5. “lord” because it is the master;

6. “substantiality” because it cannot be destroyed by any means.

This view of *attā*, held by heretics, is opposed to the view that elements are empty and void of *attā*.

\* \* \*

## Two Kinds of Attā

p. xxvii The Buddha, in the light of right understanding, did not reject the conventional mode of speech. He explained that *attā* (or self) is a conventional term used to denote the combination of the five *khandhā* or aggregates. It is used in this sense in the Atta-vagga of Dhammapada.

The Buddha, in the light of heretical views, rejected the *attā* (or self) view held by heretics.

\* \* \*

## The Elements Are Void of Beings

The elements do not possess the characteristic functions of living beings. They arise and cease within an exceedingly short period of time. In the wink of an eye or a flash of lightning, which lasts for a microsecond ( $10^{-6}$  seconds), the mental elements arise and cease a trillion ( $10^{12}$ ) times. This is just an estimate. The subcommentary takes the higher figure of  $10^{15}$ . Thus the mental elements arise and cease  $10^{15} \times 10^6 = 10^{21}$  times per second. Their extremely short duration is also mentioned in the Aṅguṭṭara Nikāya. As regards the material elements, since they endure for 17 thought-moments, they arise and cease  $10^{21}/17$  (app.=58,823,530,000,000,000) times per second. But because the functions of the elements give rise to the concepts of continuity, collection and form the ideas arise of

1. the initial effort that has to be exerted when a deed is about to be performed and
2. the care that has to be taken while the deed is being performed to its completion.

And this leads to the subsequent ideas

3. “I can perform” and
4. “I can feel”.

Thus these 4 imaginary characteristic functions of being have brought about a deep-rooted belief in their existence. But the elements have not the time or span of duration to carry out such functions.

\* \* \*

## The Elements Are Void of Life

The elements arise and cease without any movement taking place. The life characteristics of the elements are physical life, psychical life, heat produced by kamma and mental life-continuum. These arise and cease as stated above. When they cease and do not arise again in the present existence this is known as death. But because the concepts of walking, speaking, breathing and other physical actions can be performed without assistance, it is imagined | that there is life. So it is conventionally said that a being lives for 7 days, 8 months, 10 years, 50 years, etc. The heretics hold several views of life, such as life is the being, the being is life or the being has both life and body. Such views relate to the life of the *attā*.

p. xxviii

\* \* \*

## The Illusory Nature of the World

The material and mental elements may be compared to the shadows on the cinema screen, which appear and disappear in rapid succession. The mind-consciousness element (of what is conventionally said to be the spectator) takes the actors, actresses, rivers, mountains, etc., as objects, and a drama is built up from them. This is due to a perverted belief that the actors, etc., exist, and the shadows serve as stimuli for imagining them. Similarly the material and mental elements arise and cease in rapid succession and the mind-consciousness element takes

men, women, trees, mountains, etc., as objects, and a drama of a world of animate and inanimate things is built up from them. This is due to the perverted belief in the existence of a living world of persons and things and the elements serve as stimuli for imagining them. Here the difference from the cinema is that there are no spectators as the mind-consciousness element is also like the shadow on the screen, *i.e.* it is always arising and ceasing. If the mind-consciousness element is not seen in this manner according to reality it will be believed that it permanently resides in the body and that it is the same mind-consciousness element that

1. seeks and takes objects;
2. is present throughout the day;
3. was present yesterday, is present now and will be present tomorrow,

in other words, that from birth to death the mind-consciousness element is the same and is conscious of all daily actions, speech and thoughts.

\* \* \*

## Conclusion

The Dhātukathā was expounded by the Buddha in order to dispel wrong views of *attā*, *i.e.* of substantiality, ego-entity, self, soul, I, being, person, man, woman, and life. It deals with the states (*dhammā*), which are the only things to be found, under the | categories of aggregates, bases and elements which are all *anattā*, *i.e.* not *attā*. Therefore there is no *attā* but only the arising and ceasing of states that are either aggregates, bases or elements. Being, person, self, I, etc. are mere concepts expressed in conventional terms which the vast majority believe correspond with reality. As there will be no great attachment to concepts, a deeper practical study will be made of the aggregates, bases and elements. If it is realized that these are impermanent, and therefore unsatisfactory, burdensome, and, in short, are suffering, they will

be given up and release from suffering, Nibbāna, attained. And this is the sole purpose of the Buddha's Teaching.

Thein Nyun





# Introduction

The Buddha is said to have expounded the Abhidhamma in Tāvatiṃsā, p. xxxi the abode of the 33 Devas. Dhātukathā was the subject of discourse following Vibhaṅga. Therefore, its contents form the third book of the Abhidhamma Piṭaka. *Dhātu* (element) is defined as that which bears its own nature. Thus all the states of enquiry of the text beginning with the aggregates and ending with the couplet on lamentation come under the elements. This also implies that elements are not living beings and are not concerned with them. Dhātukathā (Discourse on Elements) deals with the classification, unclassification, association and dissociation of the above states of enquiry with reference to the three categories of 5 aggregates, 12 bases and 18 elements. Although these elements are expounded in the Dhammasaṅgaṇī and Vibhaṅga, they are not treated exclusively and in detail there as they are in this text.

A literal translation of the Dhātukathā is simple enough but unless the readers have mastered the relevant portions of the first two Abhidhamma texts, the Dhammasaṅgaṇī and Vibhaṅga, they will not be able to understand it by themselves. So, in order to help them, charts and explanations are provided at the end of each chapter. First of all, the reader must know the analytical units of the states of enquiry of the text and the general system of classification of these units under the aggregates, bases and elements. This information is provided after the translation of [Chapter I](#) by the Chart and the Internal and External Tables. In the latter tables, the analytical units are given so as to show why a state is classified and unclassified under the given

aggregates, bases and elements. Unless a proper study is made of this Chapter, it will be of no use to proceed further with the text. Then in the following four chapters, where the states of enquiry are compared with other states, it is necessary to know what “these states” and “those states” stand for. This is the most difficult part of the text. The Charts and Explanations show the methods, give reasons why certain states of enquiry are dealt with in a particular chapter, and reveal what “these states” and “those states” stand for. This is also done for the association of states with and dissociation of states from the aggregates, bases and elements in Chapters VI to X and for the remaining four chapters which are combinations of classification, unclassification, association and dissociation.

p. xxxii

The text consists of two parts,

1. the Table of Contents and
2. the Catechetical Exposition.

The first part lists not only the methods and the subject-matter but also the bases of the methods. It gives an outline of the treatment of the text under the headings: 1. Methods, 2. Internal States of Enquiry, 3. Principles of the Methods, 4. Characteristics of the Methods, and 5. External States of Enquiry.

1. *Methods*: This gives the list of the 14 methods which are discussed, chapter by chapter, in the catechetical exposition which forms the main body of the text.
2. *Internal States of Enquiry*: This gives a table of 105 states of enquiry which are treated together as a group only in the Dhātukathā. In the Vibhaṅga they are found scattered here and there. Hence they are known as the internal states of enquiry in this text.

It will be noted that instead of 12, there are 28 states of dependent origination. This is because

- (a) 10 becomings are included under rebirth-becoming and
- (b) ageing, death, sorrow and the 4 states ending with despair are taken separately.

The 4 applications of mindfulness and so on up to the Noble

Eightfold Path are each dealt with as a group and taken as one state of enquiry.

The contact group of 7 consists of some of the primary mental factors which, though they already have been included in dependent origination and others, are again taken as separate states of enquiry because they are associated with every mental grouping. The two remaining primary mental factors, psychical life and one-pointedness, are excluded because in the case of psychical life, physical life (materiality) is involved and in the case of one-pointedness, it is not associated with every mental grouping nor with a great number of them when it is considered under two kinds, the common and the special. The common kind which is associated with twice fivefold sense consciousness 10, doubt-associated consciousness 1, mind element 3, investigation consciousness 3, *i.e.* 17 types of consciousness, is different from the one-pointedness factor of the 5 strengths, the special kind which is associated with the remaining 72 types of consciousness.

Decision is not a primary mental factor but is included in the contact group because it is associated with the greatest number of mental groupings (78 types of consciousness).

3. *Principles of the Methods*: This shows that all the states of enquiry p. xxxiii
  - (a) are to be classified and unclassified under the 3 categories of aggregates, bases and elements. This is not possible with other categories such as truths, faculties, etc.;
  - (b) are to be associated with and dissociated from the 4 mental aggregates. Materiality and Nibbāna are not considered because the two are neither mutually associated nor dissociated and are always dissociated from the 4 mental aggregates.
4. *Characteristics of the Methods*: This shows that the states of enquiry
  - (a) either possess or do not possess the common characteristic of classification under the same aggregate or base or

element. For example, the eye base and ear base possess the common physical characteristic of classification under matter aggregate; pleasant feeling and painful feeling possess the common characteristic of classification under feeling aggregate. But eye base and painful feeling do not possess the common characteristic of classification under the same aggregate;

- (b) either possess or do not possess the four common characteristics of association, *i.e.* arising together, ceasing together, having the same object and the same base.

5. *External States of Enquiry*: All the 22 triplets and 100 couplets dealt with in the text are also the states of enquiry of the Dhammasaṅgaṇī and are not peculiar to the Dhātukathā. Hence they are known as the external states of enquiry.

\* \* \*

## The Catechetical Exposition

In the Abhidhamma the ultimate realities, which are merely abstract qualities, are dealt with in an exhaustive and comprehensive manner. And in the Dhātukathā they are treated under the three categories of aggregates, bases and elements. These are explained in detail in Abhidhamma Vibhaṅga. There are no descriptions of beings, persons, men, women, trees, mountains, oceans, etc. as in the Suttas where conventional language is employed, for it is held that these things, both inanimate and animate, are mere terms and concepts based on the ultimate realities and have no real existence whatsoever.

The inanimate things which are known as trees, mountains, stones, etc. are, in reality, eight material qualities which come under matter aggregate, 5 bases and 5 elements. As regards animate things, when a person is said to have:

p. xxxiv

1. A fair or brown complexion, this refers to the ultimate material quality, the visible object element, which comes under matter aggregate, visible object base and visible object element.

2. A smooth or rough skin, this refers to the ultimate material quality, the earth element, which comes under matter aggregate, tangible object base and tangible object element.
3. A good voice, this refers to the ultimate material quality, sound element, which comes under matter aggregate, sound base and sound element.

Again, when a person is said:

1. To be happy or sad, this refers to the ultimate mental quality, the mental factor of feeling, which comes under feeling aggregate, cognizable base and cognizable element.
2. To have a good or bad memory, this refers to the ultimate mental quality, the mental factor of perception, which comes under perception aggregate, cognizable base and cognizable element.
3. To be thinking, speaking or acting; to be greedy, angry, bewildered, envious, etc., these refer to the ultimate mental realities which are part of the 50<sup>1</sup> mental factors of mental formation which come under mental formation aggregate, cognizable base and cognizable element.

Also when a person is said to be:

1. Looking at the cinema, this refers to the ultimate mental reality, eye-consciousness, which comes under consciousness aggregate, mind base and eye-consciousness element.
2. Listening to the radio, this refers to the ultimate mental reality, sound-consciousness, which comes under consciousness aggregate, mind base and ear-consciousness element.
3. Smelling a rose, this refers to the ultimate mental reality, nose-consciousness, which comes under consciousness aggregate, mind base and nose-consciousness element.
4. Eating cakes, this refers to the ultimate mental reality, tongue-consciousness, which comes under consciousness aggregate, mind base and tongue-consciousness element.
5. Touching the table, this refers to the ultimate mental reality, p. xxxv

---

<sup>1</sup>These have been explained in the *Dhammasaṅgaṇī*

body-consciousness, which comes under consciousness aggregate, mind base and body-consciousness element.

6. Thinking of a problem, this refers to the ultimate mental reality, mind-consciousness, which comes under consciousness aggregate, mind base and mind-consciousness element.

The majority of people, because of perverted notions, thoughts and views, really believe in the existence of the inanimate world of concrete things and the animate world of beings and so they think, speak and act accordingly. They also assume that there is a possessor of the mind, physical body and external things and a performer of deeds, and mistake terms and concepts for realities. It is the purpose of the [first chapter](#) of this text to dispel these wrong beliefs about persons and things by revealing that the aggregates, bases and elements are the only things which really exist.

\* \* \*

## I. Classification and Unclassification

There are 4 kinds of classification, namely:

1. Rank or Class, e.g. kings, brahmas, ministers, etc. Also the group of morality (virtue), the classes of which are right speech, right action and right livelihood.
2. Origin or Source, e.g. people of Kosala, of Magadha. Also the group of concentration, the sources of which are right effort, right mindfulness and right concentration.
3. Profession or Function, e.g. mahouts, horsemen, carpenters. Also the group of wisdom, the functions of which are right understanding and right planning.
4. Number, e.g. Matter aggregate is classified under 1 aggregate, 11 bases and 11 elements, the numbers being specified.

It is this numerical classification which is employed here. The numbers of the aggregates, bases and elements under which a state of enquiry is classified is given and the remaining numbers of the aggregates, bases and elements are those which are unclassified. Each

of the 371 states of enquiry of the text is classified and unclassified in this manner. The Method and Explanation of this [first chapter](#) are given after the translation as has been done with the 13 chapters that follow.

\* \* \*

## The Four Chapters Based on Chapter I

Based upon the [first chapter](#) there are 4 chapters concerned with classified and unclassified states and they go in the following order: p. xxxvi

1. The classified states form the basis for a pair of unclassified states, *i.e.* classified and unclassified.
2. The unclassified states form the basis for a pair of classified states, *i.e.* unclassified and classified.
3. The classified states form the basis for a pair of classified states, *i.e.* classified and classified.
4. The unclassified states form the basis for a pair of unclassified states, *i.e.* unclassified and unclassified.

This method of exposition is employed to provide systematic and complete information about the ultimate realities from one particular aspect. Examples of this method are also found in the Yamaka and Paṭṭhāna texts. For instance, the Khandha-yamaka has a catechetical section about

1. those in whom the matter aggregate does arise but not the feeling aggregate;
2. those in whom the feeling aggregate does arise but not the matter aggregate;
3. those in whom both the matter and feeling aggregates do arise;
4. those in whom both the matter and feeling aggregates do not arise.

The treatment is in respect of person, plane of existence and both person and plane of existence. And, with regard to the condition-dependent states, the Paṭṭhāna has a catechetical section about

1. those states that are dependent on root condition but not on object condition;
2. those states that are dependent on object condition but not on root condition;
3. those states that are dependent on both root and object conditions;
4. those states that are not dependent on both root and object conditions.

Also in the chapter on investigations, the catechetical section about

1. those states that are root condition but not predominance condition;
2. those states that are predominance condition but not root condition;
3. those states that are both root and predominance conditions;
4. those states that are not root and predominance conditions.

This is merely one example of the innumerable sections on conditions.

\* \* \*

## II. Classified and Unclassified

p. xxxvii The [second chapter](#) deals with the states that are classified under the same aggregate but not under the same base or element, and also with those states that are classified under the same aggregate and base but not under the same element. This method is applicable only to 35 states of materiality which are classified under the same aggregate and 7 states of mentality which are classified under the same aggregate and base. Thus 42 states out of the total of 371 states of enquiry in the [first chapter](#) form the subject matter in this case.

The five aggregates cannot be subjects of enquiry because each is a separate aggregate and could never be classified under the same aggregate. For instance, if matter aggregate is the subject of enquiry, it will have to be compared with one of the remaining four mental



aggregates. Matter aggregate comes under matter aggregate and the mental aggregates come under their own respective aggregates, such as feeling aggregate, perception aggregate, etc., and they could never be classified under the same aggregate as required by this method. This is also the case if any other aggregate is the subject of enquiry.

The states of enquiry consist of 10 gross bases, 10 gross elements and 7 consciousness elements and others that come under one of them. Mind base, cognizable base and cognizable element are excluded. Mind base consists of 89 types of consciousness comprising consciousness aggregate and, as explained above, aggregates cannot be the subjects of enquiry. Similarly for cognizable base and cognizable element which consist of subtle matter 16, mental factors 52 and Nibbāna, all of which come under matter, feeling, perception and mental formations aggregates except Nibbāna which is aggregate-free. This will be readily understood if reference is made to the Chart of [Chapter I](#) and for similar reasons it will be seen also that the rest of the 329 states of enquiry are excluded as well.

The pair of unclassified states have reference to the states of comparison which are not classified under:

1. The same base and the same element or under the same element under which the state of enquiry is classified.
2. The 3 categories of aggregates, bases and elements.

\* \* \*

### III. Unclassified and Classified

The [third chapter](#) deals with the states that are not classified under the same aggregate but are classified under the same base and same element. This method is applicable only to 90 states out of the total of 371 states of enquiry. The 3 mental factor aggregates, *i.e.* feeling, perception and mental formation aggregates, are included but not matter and consciousness aggregates. Although matter aggregate is not classified with the 4 remaining aggregates or with any one of them, it cannot be classified with any of those aggregates under the same base and the

same element. For matter aggregate is classified under 11 bases and 11 elements whereas the other aggregates cannot be classified under all these bases and elements as required in this system of classification. Similarly for consciousness aggregate which is also not classified with the other 4 aggregates or with any one of them under the same aggregate. For consciousness aggregate is classified under mind base and 7 consciousness elements whereas the others are classified under the remaining 11 bases and 11 elements. Thus classification with the other aggregates under the same base and same element is not possible. For similar reasons, the 12 bases, 18 elements and the rest of the 281 states of enquiry are excluded. In the case of cognizable base, parts of it, such as feeling, perception, mental formation, subtle matter and Nibbāna are included but not the base taken as a whole.

The pair of classified states have reference to the states of comparison which are classified under:

1. The same base and the same element under which the state of enquiry is classified.
2. The 3 categories of aggregates, bases and elements.

\* \* \*

## IV. Classified and Classified

The [fourth chapter](#) deals with two cases of classified states under the same aggregate, the same base and the same element:

1. with the state of enquiry and the states under comparison;
2. when they are interchanged.

This method is applicable to 69 states which are the parts of mental formation aggregate, of the 5 feeling faculties, of subtle matter and of three kinds of audible object. The remaining 302 states are not applicable.

p. xxxix

The five aggregates are excluded because each of them comes | under a separate aggregate and so they could never be classified under the same aggregate. And so also the bases, e.g. eye-base which is

classified with the other states of materiality under the same aggregate but not under the same base and the same element. The reasons for excluding the other states can be investigated.

The pair of classified states have reference to the state of enquiry which is classified under:

1. The same aggregate, the same base and the same element as the states under comparison.
2. The 3 categories of aggregates, bases and elements.

\* \* \*

## V. Unclassified and Unclassified

The [fifth chapter](#) deals with two cases of unclassified states under the same aggregate, the same base and the same element. They are

1. the state of enquiry with the states of comparison, and
2. the latter states of comparison with all other possible states.

This method is applicable to 257 states of enquiry which are a part of the aggregates or those that stand for Nibbāna.

Those states which include both subtle matter and consciousness aggregate, such as “States not visible and not impinging” are excluded. The latter consists of consciousness 89, mental factors 52, subtle matter 16, Nibbāna. These come under the 5 aggregates and, therefore, there are no other aggregates to be taken as states of comparison for unclassification under the same aggregate. Here the only remaining states are gross matter which comes under matter aggregate. Suffering truth also comes under the 5 aggregates and is also excluded. For the same reason, the rest of the 114 states are excluded.

The second verse of the Mnemonic is not that of the states of enquiry of the chapter but of the 22 states starting with matter aggregate which have the same question and answer.

The pair of unclassified states has reference to the other possible states, mentioned above, which are unclassified under:

1. The same aggregate, the same base and the same element with the states of comparison.

2. The 3 categories of aggregates, bases and elements.

\* \* \*

## VI. Association and Dissociation

p. xl The [sixth chapter](#) deals with the states that are associated with and dissociated from the aggregates, bases and elements. Only the 4 mental aggregates are mutually associated at a time in one's continuity in accordance with the association condition of Paṭṭhāna.

In this text materiality is dissociated from the 4 mental aggregates, Nibbāna is dissociated from the 4 mental aggregates, the 4 mental aggregates are dissociated from materiality and Nibbāna. But in the Paṭṭhāna materiality is dissociated from mentality and mentality is dissociated from materiality. It is there stated:

“Materiality is related to mentality by way of dissociation condition. Mentality is related to materiality by way of dissociation condition”.

This method is applicable to 250 states which are

1. pure materiality,
2. Nibbāna,
3. pure mental aggregates,
4. consciousness involved with both materiality and Nibbāna and
5. parts of the mental factor aggregates.

Those states which are

1. consciousness involved with materiality,
2. consciousness involved with Nibbāna and
3. mental factor aggregates

are excluded.

One of the states mentioned in the Mnemonic as not being included in this chapter is cognizable base. This comprises subtle matter 16, mental factors 52 and Nibbāna and therefore it has no associated states. Again, though subtle matter and Nibbāna are dissociated from

the 4 mental aggregates, the 52 mental factors are associated with consciousness aggregate and, therefore, cognizable base is not totally dissociated. The other states of the Mnemonic are similar to cognizable base in that they are not totally associated or totally dissociated.

\* \* \*

## Partial Association and Partial Dissociation

When the state of enquiry is mentality, the associated states are the mental factors of cognizable base and is therefore partially associated with this base. On the other hand, the dissociated states are materiality and Nibbāna of cognizable base and are therefore partially dissociated from this base. If the state of enquiry is a part of mental formation aggregate, then it is associated with the latter aggregate of cognizable base and is, therefore, partially associated with this base. When materiality and Nibbāna are the states of enquiry there is no association but only dissociation from the mental factors of cognizable base and they are, therefore, partially dissociated from this base. The detailed explanation is given in the Explanation of the Method and Chart of [Chapter VI](#).

p. xli

\* \* \*

## The 4 Chapters Based on Chapter VI

Based on [Chapter VI](#), there are 4 chapters concerned with associated and dissociated states and they go in the following order as given for classified and unclassified states:

1. The associated states form the basis for a pair of dissociated states, *i.e.* associated and dissociated.
2. The dissociated states form the basis for a pair of associated states, *i.e.* dissociated and associated.
3. The associated states form the basis for a pair of associated states, *i.e.* associated and associated.

4. The dissociated states form the basis for a pair of dissociated states, *i.e.* dissociated and dissociated.

\* \* \*

## VII. Associated and Dissociated

The [seventh chapter](#) deals with the dissociation of the states associated with the state of enquiry. This method is applicable to 37 states of enquiry which are mental factors either associated

1. with the seven consciousness elements;
2. with both mind element and mind-consciousness element, or which are pure consciousness aggregate.

The remaining 334 states of enquiry are excluded. Materiality is one of them because it is not associated with any state.

In the previous chapter, states of enquiry which are not associated with other states but are only dissociated can be considered because separate questions are asked about the associated and dissociated states. Here only those states of enquiry which are both associated with or dissociated from other states can be considered because this chapter deals with dissociation of associated states. If there were no associated states, then there could not be dissociation. If [Chapter VI](#) is understood, then this chapter and the others that follow will be clear.

p. xlii      The pair of dissociated states has reference to the states of comparison which are dissociated from:

1. The states associated with the state of enquiry.
2. The 3 categories of aggregates, bases and elements.

\* \* \*

## VIII. Dissociated and Associated

The [eighth chapter](#) deals with the association of the states dissociated from the state of enquiry. This method is applicable to 324 states of

enquiry which are pure materiality, Nibbāna, and mental aggregates and those that involve both materiality and mentality but are dissociated. The remaining 47 states of enquiry, which are excluded, are given in the [Mnemonic](#).

It will be found that all the questions have negative answers. Matter aggregate is dissociated from the 4 mental aggregates. But these mental aggregates are not associated with any state, *i.e.* with any aggregate, base and element and the answer to this question is negative. Also feeling aggregate is dissociated from materiality and Nibbāna but the latter two are not associated with any state and the answer is negative.

Cognizable base is not included because it comprises subtle matter 16, mental factors 52 and Nibbāna. These are not dissociated from or associated with other states. For similar reasons the other states are excluded.

Here there are no pairs of associated states since the states dissociated from the state of enquiry are not associated with any state.

\* \* \*

## IX. Associated and Associated

The [ninth chapter](#) deals with two cases of associated states:

1. with the state of enquiry and the states of comparison, and
2. when they are interchanged.

This method is applicable to 120 states of enquiry which are a part of mental aggregate. For example, feeling aggregate is associated with the other 3 mental aggregates and the latter are associated with feeling aggregate. The remaining 251 states of enquiry which are Nibbāna, pure materiality and materiality that is involved with mentality are excluded. For example, pure materiality has no associated states.

The pair of associated states has reference to the state of enquiry which is associated with: p. xliii

1. The states of comparison.
2. The 3 categories of aggregates, bases and elements.

\* \* \*

## X. Dissociated and Dissociated

The [tenth chapter](#) deals with two cases of dissociated states:

1. the state of enquiry with the states of comparison, and
2. the latter states of comparison with all other possible states.

This method is applicable to the 250 dissociated states of enquiry of [Chapter VI](#). For example, matter aggregate is dissociated from the 4 mental aggregates and the latter are dissociated from matter aggregate and Nibbāna.

The pair of dissociated states has reference to the other possible states, mentioned above, which are dissociated from:

1. The states of comparison.
2. The 3 categories of aggregates, bases and elements.

\* \* \*

## The Remaining Four Chapters

The remaining four Chapters are suitable combinations of the four general methods of classification, unclassification, association and dissociation, and they go in the following order:

1. The classified forms the basis for association and dissociation, *i.e.* associated with, and dissociated from, the classified. It is a combination of Chapters IV and VI.
2. The associated forms the basis for classification and unclassification, *i.e.* classified and unclassified concerning the associated. It is a combination of Chapters IX and I.
3. The unclassified forms the basis for association and dissociation, *i.e.* associated with, and dissociated from, the unclassified. It is a combination of Chapters V and VI.
4. The dissociated forms the basis for classification and unclassification, *i.e.* classified and unclassified concerning the dissociated. It is a combination of Chapters VIII and I.



\* \* \*

## **XI. Associated With, and Dissociated From, the Classified**

All the states of comparison, which are classified with the states of enquiry under the same aggregate, the same base and the same element in [Chapter IV](#), are treated under association and dissociation as in [Chapter VI](#). p. xliv

\* \* \*

## **XII. Classified and Unclassified Concerning the Associated**

All the states of comparison, which are associated with the states of enquiry in [Chapter IX](#), are treated under classification and unclassification as in [Chapter I](#). The Charts of [Chapters IX](#) and [XII](#) are combined together for convenience and to show their relation.

\* \* \*

## **XIII. Associated With, and Dissociated From, the Unclassified**

The states of comparison, which are not classified with the states of enquiry under the same aggregate, the same base and the same element in [Chapter V](#), are treated under association and dissociation as in [Chapter VI](#). No more than 130 states of enquiry out of 257 in [Chapter V](#) are dealt with. Moreover only the 22 states beginning with matter aggregate are mentioned in the second verse of the [Mnemonic of Chapter V](#), the 108 states beginning with immaterial becoming have been left out. But the latter must be included as given in [Chapter V](#).

The Charts of [Chapters XI](#) and [XIII](#) are combined together as the latter is a small one and can be combined with that of the former.

\* \* \*

## **XIV. Classified and Unclassified Concerning the Dissociated**

All the states of comparison, which are dissociated from the states of enquiry in [Chapter VIII](#), are treated under classification and unclassification as in [Chapter I](#). The Charts of [Chapters VIII](#) and [XIV](#) are combined together for convenience and to show their relation.

With the end of [Chapter XIV](#) the catechetical exposition of the Dhātukathā text is concluded. The subject has been systematically and exhaustively expounded by the Buddha, as is the case with the other Abhidhamma subjects, and there is nothing that needs to be supplemented.

\* \* \*

p. xlv

The translation was made from the 6th Synod edition of Dhātukathā. The explanations are based on the Commentaries. My thanks are due to Miss I.B. Horner, President of the Pali Text Society, for her valuable advice and suggestions and to Ma Khin Khin Hlaing for typing the manuscript.

U Nārada  
Mūla Paṭṭhāna Sayadaw  
Rangoon  
December, 1961





**Discourse on Elements  
(Dhātukathā)**



*Veneration to that Exalted One,  
the Arahāt, the Enlightened Buddha*





# The Treatment of the Text

## I. Methods

- I. Classification and Unclassification p. xlvii
- II. Classified and Unclassified
- III. Unclassified and Classified
- IV. Classified and Classified
- V. Unclassified and Unclassified
- VI. Association and Dissociation
- VII. Associated and Dissociated
- VIII. Dissociated and Associated
- IX. Associated and Associated
- X. Dissociated and Dissociated
- XI. Associated With, and Dissociated From, the Classified
- XII. Classified and Unclassified Concerning the Associated

XIII. Associated With, and Dissociated From, the Unclassified

XIV. Classified and Unclassified Concerning the Dissociated

## II. Internal States of Enquiry<sup>1</sup>

p. xlviii	5	Aggregates	=	5
	12	Bases	=	12
	18	Elements	=	18
	4	Truths	=	4
	22	Faculties	=	22
		Dependent Origination	=	28
	4	Applications of Mindfulness	=	1
	4	Great Efforts	=	1
	4	Roads to Psychic Power	=	1
	4	Trances (Jhānas)	=	1
	4	Illimitable States	=	1
	5	Faculties	=	1
	5	Strengths	=	1
	7	Factors of Enlightenment	=	1
	8	The Noble Eightfold Path	=	1
		Contact	}	= 7
		Feeling		
		Perception		
		Volition		
		Consciousness		
		Decision		
		Attention		
		Total	=	105

<sup>1</sup>Internal states of enquiry 105; all are treated in [Chapter I](#).

### **III. Principles of the Methods**

1. Classification under the three categories of aggregates, bases and elements.
2. Unclassification under the three categories of aggregates, bases and elements.
3. Association with the four mental aggregates.
4. Dissociation from the four mental aggregates.

### **IV. Characteristics of the Methods**

1. The common characteristic of conforming with the Classification and Association principles.
2. The common characteristic of not conforming with the Classification and Association principles.

### **V. External States of Enquiry<sup>1</sup>:**

All the 22 Triplets and 100 Couplets of the Dhammasaṅgaṇī table of contents.

---

<sup>1</sup>Triplets  $22 \times 3 = 66$ . Couplets  $100 \times 2 = 200 = 266$ . Total =  $105 + 266 = 371$  states; all are treated in [Chapter I](#).



# I

# Classification and Unclassification

## 1. Aggregates

### By Ones

6. Under how many aggregates, under how many bases and under p. 1  
how many elements is Matter aggregate classified? Matter aggregate  
is classified under 1 aggregate, under 11 bases and under 11<sup>1</sup> elements.

Under how many is it not classified? It is not classified under 4  
aggregates, under 1 base and under 7 elements.

7. Under how many aggregates, under how many bases and under  
how many elements is Feeling aggregate classified? Feeling aggregate  
is classified under 1 aggregate, under 1 base and under 1 element.

Under how many is it not classified? It is not classified under 4  
aggregates, under 11 bases and under 17 elements.

8. Under how many aggregates, under how many bases and under  
how many elements is Perception aggregate classified? Perception  
aggregate is classified under 1 aggregate, under 1 base and under 1  
element.

Under how many is it not classified? It is not classified under 4  
aggregates, under 11 bases and under 17 elements.

---

<sup>1</sup>The kinds of aggregates, bases and elements which are indicated by the figures  
can be seen in the Chart.

9. Under how many aggregates, under how many bases and under how many elements is Mental-formation aggregate classified? Mental-formation aggregate is classified under 1 aggregate, under 1 base and under 1 element.

Under how many is it not classified? It is not classified under 4 aggregates, under 11 bases and under 17 elements.

10. Under how many aggregates, under how many bases and under how many elements is Consciousness aggregate classified? Consciousness aggregate is classified under 1 aggregate, under 1 base and under 7 elements.

Under how many is it not classified? It is not classified under 4 aggregates, under 11 bases and under 11 elements.

### **By Twos**

p. 2 11. Under how many aggregates, under how many bases and under how many elements are Matter and Feeling aggregates classified? Matter and Feeling aggregates are classified under 2 aggregates, under 11 bases and under 11 elements.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not classified under 3 aggregates, under 1 base and under 7 elements.

12. ...Matter and Perception aggregates are classified under 2 aggregates, under 11 bases and under 11 elements.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not classified under 3 aggregates, under 1 base and under 7 elements.

13. Matter and Mental-formation aggregates are classified under 2 aggregates, under 11 bases and under 11 elements.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not classified under 3 aggregates, under 1 base and under 7 elements.

14. Matter and Consciousness aggregates are classified under 2 aggregates, under 12 bases and under 18 elements.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not classified under 3 aggregates; they are not non-classified under any bases and not non-classified under any elements.

### **By Threes**

15. Under how many aggregates, under how many bases and under how many elements are Matter, Feeling and Perception aggregates classified? Matter, Feeling and Perception aggregates are classified under 3 aggregates, under 11 bases and under 11 elements.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not classified under 2 aggregates, under 1 base and under 7 elements.

16. Matter, Feeling and Mental-formation aggregates are classified under 3 aggregates, under 11 bases and under 11 elements.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not classified under 2 aggregates, under 1 base and under 7 elements.

17. Matter, Feeling and Consciousness aggregates are classified under 3 aggregates, under 12 bases and under 18 elements.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not classified under 2 aggregates; they are not non-classified under any bases and not non-classified under any elements.

### **By Fours**

18. Under how many aggregates, under how many bases and under how many elements are Matter, Feeling, Perception and Mental-formation aggregates classified? Matter, Feeling, Perception and Mental-formation aggregates are classified under 4 aggregates, under 11 bases and under 11 elements. p. 3

Under how many are they not classified? They are not classified under 1 aggregate, under 1 base and under 7 elements.

19. Matter, Feeling, Perception and Consciousness aggregates are classified under 4 aggregates, under 12 bases and under 18 elements.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not classified under 1 aggregate; they are not non-classified under any bases and not non-classified under any elements.

### **By Fives**

20. Under how many aggregates, under how many bases and under how many elements are Matter, Feeling, Perception, Mental-

formation and Consciousness aggregates classified? Matter, Feeling, Perception, Mental-formation and Consciousness aggregates are classified under 5 aggregates, under 12 bases and under 18 elements.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not non-classified under any aggregates, not non-classified under any bases and not non-classified under any elements.

21. Under how many aggregates, under how many bases and under how many elements are the 5 aggregates classified? The 5 aggregates are classified under 5 aggregates, under 12 bases and under 18 elements.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not non-classified under any aggregates, not non-classified under any bases and not non-classified under any elements.

## 2. Bases

### By Ones

22. Under how many aggregates, under how many bases and under how many elements is Eye base classified? Eye base is classified under 1 aggregate, under 1 base and under 1 element.

p. 4 Under how many is it not classified? It is not classified under 4 aggregates, under 11 bases and under 17 elements.

23. Ear base; Nose base; Tongue base; Body base; Visible Object base; Sound base; Odour base; Taste base; Tangible Object base is classified under 1 aggregate, under 1 base and under 1 element.

Under how many is it not classified? It is not classified under 4 aggregates, under 11 bases and under 17 elements.

24. Mind base is classified under 1 aggregate, under 1 base and under 7 elements.

Under how many is it not classified? It is not classified under 4 aggregates, under 11 bases and under 11 elements.

25. Cognizable base, excluding Nibbāna<sup>1</sup> from the classification of aggregates, is classified under 4 aggregates, under 1 base and under 1 element.

---

<sup>1</sup>“*Asankhataṃ khandhatothapetva*”. Nibbāna is not classified as an aggregate.



Under how many is it not classified? It is not classified under 1 aggregate, under 11 bases and under 17 elements.

### By Twos

26. Eye base and Ear base are classified under 1 aggregate, under 2 bases and under 2 elements.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not classified under 4 aggregates, under 10 bases and under 16 elements.

27. Eye and Nose bases; Eye and Tongue bases; Eye and Body bases; Eye and Visible Object bases; Eye and Sound bases; Eye and Odour bases; Eye and Taste bases; Eye and Tangible Object bases are classified under 1 aggregate, under 2 bases and under 2 elements.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not classified under 4 aggregates, under 10 bases and under 16 elements.

28. Eye and Mind bases are classified under 2 aggregates, under 2 bases and under 8 elements.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not classified under 3 aggregates, under 10 bases and under 10 elements.

29. Eye and Cognizable bases, excluding Nibbāna from the classification of aggregates, are classified under 4 aggregates, under 2 bases and under 2 elements.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not classified under 1 aggregate, under 10 bases and under 16 elements.<sup>1</sup> ... p. 5

### By Twelves

30. Under how many aggregates, under how many bases and under how many elements are the 12 bases classified? The 12 bases, excluding Nibbāna from the classification of aggregates, are classified under 5 aggregates, under 12 bases and under 18 elements.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not non-classified under any aggregates, not non-classified under any bases and not non-classified under any elements.

---

<sup>1</sup>And so on in the cases of by Threes, by Fours, etc., up to by Twelves, only the last of the latter being mentioned.

### 3. Elements

#### By Ones

31. Under how many aggregates, under how many bases and under how many elements is Eye element classified? Eye element is classified under 1 aggregate, under 1 base and under 1 element.

Under how many is it not classified? It is not classified under 4 aggregates, under 11 bases and under 17 elements.

32. Ear element; Nose element; Tongue element; Body element; Visible Object element; Sound element; Odour element; Taste element; Tangible Object element; Eye consciousness element; Ear consciousness element; Nose consciousness element; Tongue consciousness element; Body consciousness element; Mind element; Mind consciousness element is classified under 1 aggregate, under 1 base and under 1 element.

Under how many is it not classified? It is not classified under 4 aggregates, under 11 bases and under 17 elements.

33. Cognizable element, excluding Nibbāna from the classification of aggregates, is classified under 4 aggregates, under 1 base and under 1 element.

Under how many is it not classified? It is not classified under 1 aggregate, under 11 bases and under 17 elements.

#### By Twos

p. 6 34. Eye element and Ear element are classified under 1 aggregate, under 2 bases and under 2 elements.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not classified under 4 aggregates, under 10 bases and under 16 elements.

35. Eye and Nose elements; Eye and Tongue elements; Eye and Body elements; Eye and Visible Object elements; Eye and Sound elements; Eye and Odour elements; Eye and Taste elements; Eye and Tangible Object elements are classified under 1 aggregate, under 2 bases and under 2 elements.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not classified under 4 aggregates, under 10 bases and under 16 elements.

36. Eye and Eye consciousness elements are classified under 2 aggregates, under 2 bases and under 2 elements.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not classified under 3 aggregates, under 10 bases and under 16 elements.

37. Eye and Ear consciousness elements; Eye and Nose consciousness elements; Eye and Tongue consciousness elements; Eye and Body consciousness elements; Eye and Mind elements; Eye and Mind consciousness elements are classified under 2 aggregates, under 2 bases and under 2 elements.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not classified under 3 aggregates, under 10 bases and under 16 elements.

38. Eye and Cognizable elements, excluding Nibbāna from the classification of aggregates, are classified under 4 aggregates, under 2 bases and under 2 elements.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not classified under 1 aggregate, under 10 bases and under 16 elements.<sup>1</sup> ...

### **By Eighteens**

39. Under how many aggregates, under how many bases and under how many elements are the 18 elements classified? The 18 elements, excluding Nibbāna from the classification of aggregates, are classified under 5 aggregates, under 12 bases and under 18 elements.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not non-classified under any aggregates, not non-classified under any bases and not non-classified under any elements.

## **4. Truths**

### **By Ones**

40. Under how many aggregates, under how many bases and under how many elements is Suffering truth classified? Suffering truth is classified under 5 aggregates, under 12 bases and under 18 elements. p. 7

---

<sup>1</sup>And so on in the cases of by Threes, by Fours, etc., up to by Eighteens, only the last of the latter being mentioned.

Under how many is it not classified? It is not non-classified under any aggregates, not non-classified under any bases and not non-classified under any elements.

41. Origin truth; Path truth is classified under 1 aggregate, under 1 base and under 1 element.

Under how many is it not classified? It is not classified under 4 aggregates, under 11 bases and under 17 elements.

42. Cessation truth is not classified under any aggregates; it is classified under 1 base and under 1 element.

Under how many is it not classified? It is not classified under 5 aggregates, under 11 bases and under 17 elements.

### **By Twos**

43. Suffering truth and Origin truth are classified under 5 aggregates, under 12 bases and under 18 elements.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not non-classified under any aggregates, not non-classified under any bases and not non-classified under any elements.

44. Suffering truth and Path truth are classified under 5 aggregates, under 12 bases and under 18 elements.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not non-classified under any aggregates, not non-classified under any bases and not non-classified under any elements.

45. Suffering truth and Cessation truth, excluding Nibbāna from the classification of aggregates, are classified under 5 aggregates, under 12 bases and under 18 elements.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not non-classified under any aggregates, not non-classified under any bases and not non-classified under any elements.

### **By Threes**

46. Suffering truth, Origin truth and Path truth are classified under 5 aggregates, under 12 bases and under 18 elements.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not non-classified under any aggregates, not non-classified under any bases and not non-classified under any elements. p. 8

47. Suffering truth, Origin truth and Cessation truth, excluding Nibbāna from the classification of aggregates, are classified under 5 aggregates, under 12 bases and under 18 elements.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not non-classified under any aggregates, not non-classified under any bases and not non-classified under any elements.

### **By Fours**

48. Suffering truth, Origin truth, Path truth and Cessation truth, excluding Nibbāna from the classification of aggregates, are classified under 5 aggregates, under 12 bases and under 18 elements.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not non-classified under any aggregates, not non-classified under any bases and not non-classified under any elements.

49. Under how many aggregates, under how many bases and under how many elements are the 4 truths classified? The 4 truths, excluding Nibbāna from the classification of aggregates, are classified under 5 aggregates, under 12 bases and under 18 elements.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not non-classified under any aggregates, not non-classified under any bases and not non-classified under any elements.

## **5. Faculties**

### **By Ones**

50. Under how many aggregates, under how many bases and under how many elements is Eye faculty classified? Eye faculty is classified under 1 aggregate, under 1 base and under 1 element.

Under how many is it not classified? It is not classified under 4 aggregates, under 11 bases and under 17 elements.

51. Ear faculty; Nose faculty; Tongue faculty; Body faculty; Female faculty; Male faculty is classified under 1 aggregate, under 1 base and under 1 element.

Under how many is it not classified? It is not classified under 4 aggregates, under 11 bases and under 17 elements.

p. 9 52. Mind faculty is classified under 1 aggregate, under 1 base and under 7 elements.

Under how many is it not classified? It is not classified under 4 aggregates, under 11 bases and under 11 elements.

53. Life faculty is classified under 2 aggregates, under 1 base and under 1 element.

Under how many is it not classified? It is not classified under 3 aggregates, under 11 bases and under 17 elements.

54. Bodily pleasure faculty; Bodily pain faculty; Mental joy faculty; Grief faculty; Indifference faculty; Faith faculty; Energy faculty; Mindfulness faculty; Concentration faculty; Wisdom faculty; I-shall-know-what-I-did-not-know faculty; Higher realization faculty; He-who-has-known faculty is classified under 1 aggregate, under 1 base and under 1 element.

Under how many is it not classified? It is not classified under 4 aggregates, under 11 bases and under 17 elements.

### **By Twos**

55. Eye faculty and Ear faculty are classified under 1 aggregate, under 2 bases and under 2 elements.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not classified under 4 aggregates, under 10 bases and under 16 elements.

56. Eye and Nose faculties; Eye and Tongue faculties; Eye and Body faculties; Eye and Female faculties; Eye and Male faculties are classified under 1 aggregate, under 2 bases and under 2 elements.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not classified under 4 aggregates, under 10 bases and under 16 elements.

57. Eye faculty and Mind faculty are classified under 2 aggregates, under 2 bases and under 8 elements.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not classified under 3 aggregates, under 10 bases and under 10 elements.

58. Eye faculty and Life faculty are classified under 2 aggregates, under 2 bases and under 2 elements.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not classified under 3 aggregates, under 10 bases and under 16 elements.

59. Eye and Bodily pleasure faculties; Eye and Bodily pain faculties; Eye and Mental joy faculties; Eye and Grief faculties; Eye and Indifference faculties; Eye and Faith faculties; Eye and Energy faculties; Eye and Mindfulness faculties; Eye and | Concentration faculties; Eye and Wisdom faculties; Eye and I-shall-know-what-I-did-not-know faculties; Eye and Higher realization faculties; Eye and He-who-has-known faculties are classified under 2 aggregates, under 2 bases and under 2 elements. p. 10

Under how many are they not classified? They are not classified under 3 aggregates, under 10 bases and under 16 elements.<sup>1</sup> ...

### **By Twenty-twos**

60. Under how many aggregates, under how many bases and under how many elements are the 22 faculties classified? The 22 faculties are classified under 4 aggregates, under 7 bases and under 13 elements.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not classified under 1 aggregate, under 5 bases and under 5 elements.

### **6. Dependent Origination and so on**

61. Ignorance is classified under 1 aggregate, under 1 base and under 1 element.

Under how many is it not classified? It is not classified under 4 aggregates, under 11 bases and under 17 elements.

62. Conditioned by ignorance, Formations are classified under 1 aggregate, under 1 base and under 1 element.

---

<sup>1</sup>And so on in the cases of by Threes, by Fours, etc., up to by Twenty-twos, only the last of the latter being mentioned.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not classified under 4 aggregates, under 11 bases and under 17 elements.

63. Conditioned by formations, Consciousness is classified under 1 aggregate, under 1 base and under 7 elements.

Under how many is it not classified? It is not classified under 4 aggregates, under 11 bases and under 11 elements.

64. Conditioned by consciousness, mentality-materiality is classified under 4 aggregates, under 11 bases and under 11 elements.

Under how many is it not classified? It is not classified under 1 aggregate, under 1 base and under 7 elements.

65. Conditioned by mentality-materiality, 6 bases are classified under 2 aggregates, under 6 bases and under 12 elements.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not classified under 3 aggregates, under 6 bases and under 6 elements.

p. 11 66. Conditioned by 6 bases, Contact; Conditioned by contact, Feeling; Conditioned by feeling, Craving; Conditioned by craving, Clinging; Kamma becoming is classified under 1 aggregate, under 1 base and under 1 element.

Under how many is it not classified? It is not classified under 4 aggregates, under 11 bases and under 17 elements.

67. Rebirth becoming; Sensuous becoming; Percepted becoming; Five-aggregate becoming is classified under 5 aggregates, under 11 bases and under 17 elements.

Under how many is it not classified? It is not non-classified under any aggregates; it is not classified under 1 base and under 1 element.

68. Fine-material becoming is classified under 5 aggregates, under 5 bases and under 8 elements.

Under how many is it not classified? It is not non-classified under any aggregates; it is not classified under 7 bases and under 10 elements.

69. Immaterial becoming; Neither perception nor non-perception becoming; Four-aggregate becoming is classified under 4 aggregates, under 2 bases and under 2 elements.

Under how many is it not classified? It is not classified under 1 aggregate, under 10 bases and under 16 elements.



70. Non-percepted becoming; One-aggregate becoming is classified under 1 aggregate, under 2 bases and under 2 elements.

Under how many is it not classified? It is not classified under 4 aggregates, under 10 bases and under 16 elements.

71. Birth is classified under 2 aggregates ... Ageing is classified under 2 aggregates ... Death is classified under 2 aggregates, under 1 base and under 1 element.

Under how many is it not classified? It is not classified under 3 aggregates, under 11 bases and under 17 elements.

72. Sorrow; Lamentation; Suffering; Grief; Despair; Application of mindfulness; Great effort is classified under 1 aggregate, under 1 base and under 1 element.

Under how many is it not classified? It is not classified under 4 aggregates, under 11 bases and under 17 elements.

73. Road to psychic power is classified under 2 aggregates, under 2 bases and under 2 elements.

Under how many is it not classified? It is not classified under 3 aggregates, under 10 bases and under 16 elements.

74. Trance or Jhāna is classified under 2 aggregates, under 1 base and under 1 element. p. 12

Under how many is it not classified? It is not classified under 3 aggregates, under 11 bases and under 17 elements.

75. Illimitables; 5 Faculties; 5 Strengths; 7 Factors of Enlightenment; Noble Eightfold Path; Contact; Feeling; Perception; Volition; Decision; Attention is classified under 1 aggregate, under 1 base and under 1 element.

Under how many is it not classified? It is not classified under 4 aggregates, under 11 bases and under 17 elements.

76. Consciousness is classified under 1 aggregate, under 1 base and under 7 elements.

Under how many is it not classified? It is not classified under 4 aggregates, under 11 bases and under 11 elements.

## 7. Triplets 22

77. Under how many aggregates, under how many bases and under how many elements are Wholesome states; Unwholesome states classified? Wholesome states; Unwholesome states are classified under 4 aggregates, under 2 bases and under 2 elements.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not classified under 1 aggregate, under 10 bases and under 16 elements.

78. Indeterminate states, excluding Nibbāna from the classification of aggregates, are classified under 5 aggregates, under 12 bases and under 18 elements.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not non-classified under any aggregates, not non-classified under any bases and not non-classified under any elements.

79. States associated with pleasant feeling; States associated with painful feeling are classified under 3 aggregates, under 2 bases and under 3 elements.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not classified under 2 aggregates, under 10 bases and under 15 elements.

80. States associated with feeling that is neither painful nor pleasant are classified under 3 aggregates, under 2 bases and under 7 elements.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not classified under 2 aggregates, under 10 bases and under 11 elements.

p. 13 81. Resultant states are classified under 4 aggregates, under 2 bases and under 8 elements.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not classified under 1 aggregate, under 10 bases and under 10 elements.

82. States producing resultant states; Corrupt and corrupting states are classified under 4 aggregates, under 2 bases and under 2 elements.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not classified under 1 aggregate, under 10 bases and under 16 elements.

83. States which are neither resultant nor producing resultant states, excluding Nibbāna from the classification of aggregates, are classified under 5 aggregates, under 12 bases and under 13 elements.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not non-classified under any aggregates, not non-classified under any bases; they are not classified under 5 elements.

84. States which are acquired by clinging and favourable to clinging are classified under 5 aggregates, under 11 bases and under 17 elements.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not non-classified under any aggregates; they are not classified under 1 base and under 1 element.

85. States which are not acquired by clinging but favourable to clinging are classified under 5 aggregates, under 7 bases and under 8 elements.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not non-classified under any aggregates; they are not classified under 5 bases and under 10 elements.

86. States which are not acquired by clinging and not favourable to clinging; Not corrupt and not corrupting states, excluding Nibbāna from the classification of aggregates, are classified under 4 aggregates, under 2 bases and under 2 elements.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not classified under 1 aggregate, under 10 bases and under 16 elements.

87. Not corrupt but corrupting states are classified under 5 aggregates, under 12 bases and under 18 elements.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not non-classified under any aggregates, not non-classified under any bases and not non-classified under any elements.

88. States with applied thought and sustained thought are classified under 4 aggregates, under 2 bases and under 3 elements.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not classified p. 14  
under 1 aggregate, under 10 bases and under 15 elements.

89. States without applied thought but with sustained thought; States accompanied by rapture are classified under 4 aggregates, under 2 bases and under 2 elements.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not classified under 1 aggregate, under 10 bases and under 16 elements.

90. States without applied thought and sustained thought, excluding Nibbāna from the classification of aggregates, are classified under 5 aggregates, under 12 bases and under 17 elements.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not non-classified under any aggregates, not non-classified under any bases; they are not classified under 1 element.

91. States accompanied by pleasure are classified under 3 aggregates, under 2 bases and under 3 elements.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not classified under 2 aggregates, under 10 bases and under 15 elements.

92. States accompanied by indifference are classified under 3 aggregates, under 2 bases and under 7 elements.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not classified under 2 aggregates, under 10 bases and under 11 elements.

93. States eradicated by First Path; States eradicated by Higher 3 Paths; States together with roots eradicated by First Path; States together with roots eradicated by Higher 3 Paths; States leading to rebirth and death; States leading to Nibbāna; States appertaining to Learners; States appertaining to Arahatta; Lofty states are classified under 4 aggregates, under 2 bases and under 2 elements.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not classified under 1 aggregate, under 10 bases and under 16 elements.

94. States eradicated neither by First Path nor by Higher 3 Paths; States together with roots eradicated neither by First Path nor by Higher 3 Paths; States neither leading to rebirth and death nor to Nibbāna; States appertaining to neither Learners nor Arahatta, excluding Nibbāna from the classification of aggregates, are classified under 5 aggregates, under 12 bases and under 18 elements.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not non-classified under any aggregates, not non-classified under any bases and not non-classified under any elements.

95. Limited states are classified under 5 aggregates, under 12 bases and under 18 elements.

p. 15 Under how many are they not classified? They are not non-classified under any aggregates, not non-classified under any bases and not non-classified under any elements.

96. Incomparable states; Exalted states, excluding Nibbāna from the classification of aggregates, are classified under 4 aggregates, under 2 bases and under 2 elements.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not classified under 1 aggregate, under 10 bases and under 16 elements.

97. States with limited objects are classified under 4 aggregates, under 2 bases and under 8 elements.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not classified under 1 aggregate, under 10 bases and under 10 elements.

98. States with Lofty objects; States with incomparable objects; Low states; States with fixed destiny due to wrong views; States with fixed destiny due to right views; States with Path object; States conditioned by the Path; States dominated by the Path are classified under 4 aggregates, under 2 bases and under 2 elements.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not classified under 1 aggregate, under 10 bases and under 16 elements.

99. Medium states are classified under 5 aggregates, under 12 bases and under 18 elements.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not non-classified under any aggregates, not non-classified under any bases and not non-classified under any elements.

100. States with no fixed destiny, excluding Nibbāna from the classification of aggregates, are classified under 5 aggregates, under 12 bases and under 18 elements.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not non-classified under any aggregates, not non-classified under any bases and not non-classified under any elements.

101. States arisen are classified under 5 aggregates, under 12 bases and under 18 elements.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not non-classified under any aggregates, not non-classified under any bases and not non-classified under any elements.

102. States not arisen are classified under 5 aggregates, under 7 bases and under 8 elements.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not non-

classified under any aggregates; they are not classified under 5 bases and under 10 elements.

p. 16 103. States bound to arise are classified under 5 aggregates, under 11 bases and under 17 elements.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not non-classified under any aggregates; they are not classified under 1 base and under 1 element.

104. Past states; Future states; Present states; Internal states; Internal and external states are classified under 5 aggregates, under 12 bases and under 18 elements.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not non-classified under any aggregates, not non-classified under any bases and not non-classified under any elements.

105. External states, excluding Nibbāna from the classification of aggregates, are classified under 5 aggregates, under 12 bases and under 18 elements.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not non-classified under any aggregates, not non-classified under any bases and not non-classified under any elements.

106. States with past object; States with future object are classified under 4 aggregates, under 2 bases and under 2 elements.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not classified under 1 aggregate, under 10 bases and under 16 elements.

107. States with present object; States with internal object; States with external object; States with internal and external object are classified under 4 aggregates, under 2 bases and under 8 elements.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not classified under 1 aggregate, under 10 bases and under 10 elements.

108. States both visible and impinging are classified under 1 aggregate, under 1 base and under 1 element.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not classified under 4 aggregates, under 11 bases and under 17 elements.

109. States invisible but impinging are classified under 1 aggregate, under 9 bases and under 9 elements.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not classified under 4 aggregates, under 3 bases and under 9 elements.

110. States not visible and not impinging, excluding Nibbāna from the classification of aggregates, are classified under 5 aggregates, under 2 bases and under 8 elements.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not non-classified under any aggregates; they are not classified under 10 bases and under 10 elements.

## **8. Couplets 100**

### **I. Root Clusters 6**

111. States which are roots; States which are roots and also have associated roots; States which are roots and also associated with roots are classified under 1 aggregate, under 1 base and under 1 element. p. 17

Under how many are they not classified? They are not classified under 4 aggregates, under 11 bases and under 17 elements.

112. States which are not roots; States which have no roots; States which are dissociated from roots; States which are neither roots nor have associated roots, excluding Nibbāna from the classification of aggregates, are classified under 5 aggregates, under 12 bases and under 18 elements.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not non-classified under any aggregates, not non-classified under any bases and not non-classified under any elements.

113. States which have associated roots; States which are associated with roots; States which have associated roots but are not roots; States which are associated with roots but are not roots; States which are not roots but have associated roots are classified under 4 aggregates, under 2 bases and under 2 elements.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not classified under 1 aggregate, under 10 bases and under 16 elements.

### **II. Lesser Intermediate Couplets 7**

114. States arising from 4 causes; States conditioned by 4 causes are classified under 5 aggregates, under 12 bases and under 18 elements.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not non-classified under any aggregates, not non-classified under any bases and not non-classified under any elements.

115. States not arising from 4 causes; States not conditioned by 4 causes are not classified under any aggregates; they are classified under 1 base and under 1 element.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not classified under 5 aggregates, under 11 bases and under 17 elements.

116. States with visibility are classified under 1 aggregate, under 1 base and under 1 element.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not classified under 4 aggregates, under 11 bases and under 17 elements.

p. 18

117. States without visibility, excluding Nibbāna from the classification of aggregates, are classified under 5 aggregates, under 11 bases and under 17 elements.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not non-classified under any aggregates; they are not classified under 1 base and under 1 element.

118. States with impinging are classified under 1 aggregate, under 10 bases and under 10 elements.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not classified under 4 aggregates, under 2 bases and under 8 elements.

119. States without impinging, excluding Nibbāna from the classification of aggregates, are classified under 5 aggregates, under 2 bases and under 8 elements.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not non-classified under any aggregates; they are not classified under 10 bases and under 10 elements.

120. States which have physical change are classified under 1 aggregate, under 11 bases and under 11 elements.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not classified under 4 aggregates, under 1 base and under 7 elements.

121. States which have no physical change, excluding Nibbāna from the classification of aggregates, are classified under 4 aggregates, under 2 bases and under 8 elements.



Under how many are they not classified? They are not classified under 1 aggregate, under 10 bases and under 10 elements.

122. States which are mundane are classified under 5 aggregates, under 12 bases and under 18 elements.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not non-classified under any aggregates, not non-classified under any bases and not non-classified under any elements.

123. States which are Supramundane, excluding Nibbāna from the classification of aggregates, are classified under 4 aggregates, under 2 bases and under 2 elements.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not classified under 1 aggregate, under 10 bases and under 16 elements.

124. States<sup>1</sup> cognizable by any one of the eye-consciousness, etc.; | States not cognizable by any one of the eye-consciousness, etc., excluding Nibbāna from the classification of aggregates, are classified under 5 aggregates, under 12 bases and under 18 elements. p. 19

Under how many are they not classified? They are not non-classified under any aggregates, not non-classified under any bases and not non-classified under any elements.

### **III. Canker Clusters 6**

125. States which are cankers; States which are both cankers and objects of cankers; States which are both cankers and associated with cankers are classified under 1 aggregate, under 1 base and under 1 element.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not classified under 4 aggregates, under 11 bases and under 17 elements.

126. States which are not cankers; States which are dissociated from cankers, excluding Nibbāna from the classification of aggregates, are classified under 5 aggregates, under 12 bases and under 18 elements.

---

<sup>1</sup>The six kinds of consciousness are to be taken in turns. When the states cognizable by eye-consciousness are taken, the states not cognizable are the remaining 5 kinds of consciousness with the mental factors, Nibbāna and physical states.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not non-classified under any aggregates, not non-classified under any bases and not non-classified under any elements.

127. States which are objects of cankers; States which are objects of cankers but not cankers; States which are dissociated from cankers but are objects of cankers are classified under 5 aggregates, under 12 bases and under 18 elements.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not non-classified under any aggregates, not non-classified under any bases and not non-classified under any elements.

128. States which are not objects of cankers; States which are dissociated from cankers and are not objects of cankers, excluding Nibbāna from the classification of aggregates, are classified under 4 aggregates, under 2 bases and under 2 elements.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not classified under 1 aggregate, under 10 bases and under 16 elements.

129. States which are associated with cankers; States which are associated with cankers but are not cankers are classified under 4 aggregates, under 2 bases and under 2 elements.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not classified under 1 aggregate, under 10 bases and under 16 elements.

#### **IV to IX. Fetter, Tie, Flood, Bond, Hindrance and Misapprehension Clusters**

p. 20 130. States which are fetters ...States which are ties ...States which are floods ...States which are bonds ...States which are hindrances ...States which are misapprehensions; States which are both misapprehensions and objects of misapprehensions are classified under 1 aggregate, under 1 base and under 1 element.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not classified under 4 aggregates, under 11 bases and under 17 elements.

131. States which are not misapprehensions; States which are dissociated from misapprehensions, excluding Nibbāna from the classification of aggregates, are classified under 5 aggregates, under 12 bases and under 18 elements.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not non-classified under any aggregates, not non-classified under any bases and not non-classified under any elements.

132. States which are objects of misapprehensions; States which are objects of misapprehensions but are not misapprehensions; States which are dissociated from misapprehensions but are objects of misapprehensions are classified under 5 aggregates, under 12 bases and under 18 elements.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not non-classified under any aggregates, not non-classified under any bases and not non-classified under any elements.

133. States which are not objects of misapprehensions; States which are dissociated from misapprehensions and are not objects of misapprehensions, excluding Nibbāna from the classification of aggregates, are classified under 4 aggregates, under 2 bases and under 2 elements.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not classified under 1 aggregate, under 10 bases and under 16 elements.

134. States which are associated with misapprehensions are classified under 4 aggregates, under 2 bases and under 2 elements.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not classified under 1 aggregate, under 10 bases and under 16 elements.

## **X. Greater Intermediate Couplets 14**

135. States which have objects are classified under 4 aggregates, under 2 bases and under 8 elements.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not classified under 1 aggregate, under 10 bases and under 10 elements. p. 21

136. States which have no objects, excluding Nibbāna from the classification of aggregates, are classified under 1 aggregate, under 11 bases and under 11 elements.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not classified under 4 aggregates, under 1 base and under 7 elements.

137. States which are consciousness are classified under 1 aggregate, under 1 base and under 7 elements.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not classified under 4 aggregates, under 11 bases and under 11 elements.

138. States which are not consciousness, excluding Nibbāna from the classification of aggregates, are classified under 4 aggregates, under 11 bases and under 11 elements.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not classified under 1 aggregate, under 1 base and under 7 elements.

139. States which are mental factors; States which are associated with consciousness; States which are conjoined with consciousness are classified under 3 aggregates, under 1 base and under 1 element.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not classified under 2 aggregates, under 11 bases and under 17 elements.

140. States which are not mental factors, excluding Nibbāna from the classification of aggregates, are classified under 2 aggregates, under 12 bases and under 18 elements.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not classified under 3 aggregates; they are not non-classified under any bases and not non-classified under any elements.

141. States which are dissociated from consciousness; States which are not conjoined with consciousness, excluding Nibbāna from the classification of aggregates, are classified under 1 aggregate, under 11 bases and under 11 elements.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not classified under 4 aggregates, under 1 base and under 7 elements.

142. States which are generated by consciousness are classified under 4 aggregates, under 6 bases and under 6 elements.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not classified under 1 aggregate, under 6 bases and under 12 elements.

143. States which are not generated by consciousness; States which do not arise together with consciousness; States which do not arise successively with consciousness, excluding Nibbāna from the classification of aggregates, are classified under 2 aggregates, under 12 bases and under 18 elements.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not classified under 3 aggregates; they are not non-classified under any bases and not non-classified under any elements.

144. States which arise together with consciousness; States which arise successively with consciousness are classified under 4 aggregates, under 1 base and under 1 element.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not classified under 1 aggregate, under 11 bases and under 17 elements.

145. States which are both conjoined with and are generated by consciousness; States which are conjoined with, are generated by and arise together with consciousness; States which are conjoined with, are generated by and arise successively with consciousness are classified under 3 aggregates, under 1 base and under 1 element.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not classified under 2 aggregates, under 11 bases and under 17 elements.

146. States which are not conjoined with and are not generated by consciousness; States which are not conjoined with, are not generated by and do not arise together with consciousness; States which are not conjoined with, are not generated by and do not arise successively with consciousness, excluding Nibbāna from the classification of aggregates, are classified under 2 aggregates, under 12 bases and under 18 elements.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not classified under 3 aggregates; they are not non-classified under any bases and not non-classified under any elements.

147. States which are internal are classified under 2 aggregates, under 6 bases and under 12 elements.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not classified under 3 aggregates, under 6 bases and under 6 elements.

148. States which are external, excluding Nibbāna from the classification of aggregates, are classified under 4 aggregates, under 6 bases and under 6 elements.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not classified under 1 aggregate, under 6 bases and under 12 elements.

149. States which are derived are classified under 1 aggregate, under 10 bases and under 10 elements.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not classified under 4 aggregates, under 2 bases and under 8 elements.

150. States which are not derived, excluding Nibbāna from the p. 23

classification of aggregates, are classified under 5 aggregates, under 3 bases and under 9 elements.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not non-classified under any aggregates; they are not classified under 9 bases and under 9 elements.

151. States which are acquired by clinging are classified under 5 aggregates, under 11 bases and under 17 elements.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not non-classified under any aggregates; they are not classified under 1 base and under 1 element.

152. States which are not acquired by clinging, excluding Nibbāna from the classification of aggregates, are classified under 5 aggregates, under 7 bases and under 8 elements.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not non-classified under any aggregates; they are not classified under 5 bases and under 10 elements.

## **XI. Clinging Clusters**

### **XII. Corruption Clusters 8**

153. States which are clinging ... States which are corruptions; States which are both corruptions and objects of corruptions; States which are both corruptions and corrupt; States which are both corruptions and associated with corruptions are classified under 1 aggregate, under 1 base and under 1 element.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not classified under 4 aggregates, under 11 bases and under 17 elements.

154. States which are not corruptions; States which are not corrupt; States which are dissociated from corruptions, excluding Nibbāna from the classification of aggregates, are classified under 5 aggregates, under 12 bases and under 18 elements.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not non-classified under any aggregates, not non-classified under any bases and not non-classified under any elements.

155. States which are objects of corruptions; States which are ob-

jects of corruptions but are not corruptions; States which are dissociated from corruptions but are objects of corruptions are classified under 5 aggregates, under 12 bases and under 18 elements.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not non-classified under any aggregates, not non-classified under any bases and not non-classified under any elements. p. 24

156. States which are not objects of corruptions; States which are dissociated from corruptions and are not objects of corruptions, excluding Nibbāna from the classification of aggregates, are classified under 4 aggregates, under 2 bases and under 2 elements.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not classified under 1 aggregate, under 10 bases and under 16 elements.

157. States which are corrupt; States which are associated with corruptions; States which are corrupt but are not corruptions; States which are associated with corruptions but are not corruptions are classified under 4 aggregates, under 2 bases and under 2 elements.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not classified under 1 aggregate, under 10 bases and under 16 elements.

### **XIII. Last Couplets 18**

158. States eradicated by First Path; States eradicated by Higher Three Paths; States together with roots eradicated by First Path; States together with roots eradicated by Higher Three Paths are classified under 4 aggregates, under 2 bases and under 2 elements.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not classified under 1 aggregate, under 10 bases and under 16 elements.

159. States not eradicated by First Path; States not eradicated by Higher Three Paths; States together with roots not eradicated by First Path; States together with roots not eradicated by Higher Three Paths, excluding Nibbāna from the classification of aggregates, are classified under 5 aggregates, under 12 bases and under 18 elements.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not non-classified under any aggregates, not non-classified under any bases and not non-classified under any elements.

160. States with applied-thought; States with sustained-thought are classified under 4 aggregates, under 2 bases and under 3 elements.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not classified under 1 aggregate, under 10 bases and under 15 elements.

p. 25 161. States without applied-thought; States without sustained-thought, excluding Nibbāna from the classification of aggregates, are classified under 5 aggregates, under 12 bases and under 17 elements.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not non-classified under any aggregates, not non-classified under any bases; they are not classified under 1 element.

162. States with rapture; States which are accompanied by rapture are classified under 4 aggregates, under 2 bases and under 2 elements.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not classified under 1 aggregate, under 10 bases and under 16 elements.

163. States without rapture; States which are not accompanied by rapture; States which are not accompanied by pleasure, excluding Nibbāna from the classification of aggregates, are classified under 5 aggregates, under 12 bases and under 18 elements.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not non-classified under any aggregates, not non-classified under any bases and not non-classified under any elements.

164. States which are accompanied by pleasure are classified under 3 aggregates, under 2 bases and under 3 elements.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not classified under 2 aggregates, under 10 bases and under 15 elements.

165. States which are accompanied by indifference are classified under 3 aggregates, under 2 bases and under 7 elements.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not classified under 2 aggregates, under 10 bases and under 11 elements.

166. States which are not accompanied by indifference, excluding Nibbāna from the classification of aggregates, are classified under 5 aggregates, under 12 bases and under 13 elements.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not non-classified under any aggregates, not non-classified under any bases; they are not classified under 5 elements.



167. States which belong to the sensuous plane; States which are included in the round of existences; States which are with beyond are classified under 5 aggregates, under 12 bases and under 18 elements.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not non-classified under any aggregates, not non-classified under any bases and not non-classified under any elements.

168. States which do not belong to the sensuous plane; States which are not included in the round of existences; States which are not with beyond, excluding Nibbāna from the classification of aggregates, are classified under 4 aggregates, under 2 bases and under 2 elements. p. 26

Under how many are they not classified? They are not classified under 1 aggregate, under 10 bases and under 16 elements.

169. States which belong to the fine-material plane; States which belong to the immaterial plane; States which lead out from the round of existences; States which have fixed destiny yielded after decease or after their own occurrence; States which are causes of lamentation are classified under 4 aggregates, under 2 bases and under 2 elements.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not classified under 1 aggregate, under 10 bases and under 16 elements.

170. Under how many aggregates, under how many bases and under how many elements are States which do not belong to the fine-material plane; States which do not belong to the immaterial plane; States which do not lead out from the round of existences; States which have not fixed destiny as above<sup>1</sup>; States which are not causes of lamentation classified? States which do not belong to the fine-material plane ... States which are not causes of lamentation, excluding Nibbāna from the classification of aggregates, are classified under 5 aggregates, under 12 bases and under 18 elements.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not non-classified under any aggregates, not non-classified under any bases and not non-classified under any elements.

---

<sup>1</sup>See 16. (ii) of last couplets in External Tables.

## Explanation of the Method and Chart of Chapter I

*Subject Matter:* All the 371 states of enquiry of the Dhātukathā, which are either pure materiality, mental factor, consciousness and Nibbāna or a combination of them, form the subject matter of this chapter. Each state of enquiry is classified under aggregates, bases and elements and the remaining aggregates, bases and elements out of a total of 5 aggregates, 12 bases and 18 elements are those under which it is not classified. The 371 states include all the 105 internal states of enquiry listed in the Internal Tables and all the 66 triplets and 200 couplets which are the external states of enquiry listed in the External Tables.

p. 27 *The Chart:* The chart shows the classification of the 28 states of matter aggregate, 52 mental factors, Nibbāna and 89 types of consciousness under aggregates, bases and elements. The 28 states of matter aggregate are divided into gross matter 12 and subtle matter 16 as the former comes under 10 gross bases (eye base, ear base ... tangible object base) and under 10 gross elements (eye element, ear element ... tangible object element) and the latter comes under cognizable base and under cognizable element. Subtle matter 16, mental factors 52 and Nibbāna come under cognizable base and under cognizable element.

It is seen from the Chart that:

1. sensitive eye is classified under matter aggregate, under eye base and under eye element (read down the same column of the Chart);
2. greed, which is one of the 50 states of mental formation aggregate, is classified under mental formation aggregate, under cognizable base and under cognizable element;
3. hate-rooted consciousness, which is one of the remaining 76 types of consciousness, is classified under consciousness aggregate, under mind base and under mind-consciousness element.

A thorough acquaintance with this chart is of fundamental importance because the classification of aggregates, bases and elements

shown therein forms the basis of all the methods given in the 14 chapters of this Discourse on Elements (Dhātukathā).

Unless the kinds of aggregates, bases and elements under which each state of enquiry is classified is known, their numbers, as provided in the Text, cannot be found out. And to be able to classify each state of enquiry in this manner, its analytical components under the heads of matter, mental factor, consciousness and Nibbāna must be known. This can be found in the Dhammasaṅgaṇī but for ready reference it is given in the Internal and External Tables that follow. The following examples are provided to show, with the aid of the Chart, the application of the information given in those tables to the classification of the states of enquiry under the kinds and numbers of aggregates, bases and elements.

## A. Internal Tables

### 1. Matter Aggregate (No. 1 under Five Aggregates):

The 28 states of matter aggregate consist of gross matter 12 and subtle matter 16. The Chart shows that:

Gross matter 12 is classified under	matter aggregate	10 gross bases	10 gross elements
Subtle matter 16 is classified under	matter aggregate	cognizable base	cognizable element
Therefore matter aggregate is classified under	1 aggregate	11 bases	11 elements

### 2. Cognizable base (No. 12 under Twelve Bases):

This consists of subtle matter 16, mental factors 52 and Nibbāna. The Chart shows that:

Subtle matter 16 is classified under	matter aggregate	cognizable base	cognizable element
Mental factors 52 are classified under	feeling, perception, mental formation aggregates	cognizable base	cognizable element
Nibbāna	aggregate freed	cognizable base	cognizable element
Therefore cognizable base is classified under	* <sup>4</sup> Aggregates	1 Base	1 Element

<sup>4</sup>Nibbāna is not classified as an aggregate according to the Pali Text. “*Asaṅkātāṃ khandhatotbapetvā*”. This is signified by an asterisk (\*) in all the Aggregate columns.

**3. Suffering truth (No. 1 under Four Truths)**

The Chart shows that:

Mundane consciousness 81 is classified under	consciousness aggregate, feeling, perception, mental formation aggregates	mind base	7 consciousness elements
Greedless mental factors 52 (excluding greed = 51) are classified under		cognizable base	cognizable element
Matter 28 are classified under	matter aggregate	10 gross and cognizable base	10 gross and cognizable element
Therefore suffering truth is classified under	5 aggregates	12 bases	18 elements

**4. Rebirth becoming (No. 10 under Dependent Origination)**

The Chart shows that:

Mundane resultant consciousness 32 is classified under	consciousness aggregate	mind base	7 consciousness cognizable elements
Mental factors 35 are classified under	feeling, perception, mental formation aggregates	cognizable base	cognizable element
Kamma-produced matter 20 (this excludes sound) is classified under	matter aggregate	9 gross and cognizable base	9 gross and cognizable element.
Therefore rebirth becoming is classified under	5 aggregates	11 bases	17 elements

### 5. The 4 roads to psychic power (under Applications of Mindfulness and others 9)

The Chart shows that:

Intention, energy, wisdom, mental factors are classified under	mental formation aggregate	cognizable base	cognizable element
Consciousness is classified under	consciousness aggregate	mind base	mind consciousness element

Therefore 4 roads to psychic power are classified under

2 aggregates                      2 bases                      2 elements

## B. External Tables

### 1. States associated with pleasant feeling (No. 2 (i) under Triplets)

The Chart shows that:

Consciousness accompanied by pleasure is classified under	consciousness aggregate	mind base	body consciousness element 1, mind consciousness element 1
Mental factors 46 excluding feeling, hate, envy, stinginess, worry and doubt are classified under	perception, mental formation aggregate gates	cognizable base	cognizable element
Therefore States associated with pleasant feeling are classified under	3 aggregates	2 bases	3 elements

### 2. Resultant states (No. 3 (i) under Triplets)

The Chart shows that:

Resultant consciousness 36 are classified under	consciousness aggregate gate	mind base	7 consciousness elements
Mental factors 38 are classified under	feeling, perception, mental formation aggregate gates	cognizable base	cognizable element
Therefore resultant states are classified under	4 aggregates	2 bases	8 elements

### 3. States which are not mental factors (No. 3 (ii) under Greater Intermediate Couplets)

The Chart shows that:

Consciousness 89 are classified under	consciousness aggregate	mind base	7 consciousness elements
Matter 28 are classified under	matter aggregate	10 gross and cognizable bases	10 gross and cognizable elements
Nibbāna is classified under	(aggregate freed)	cognizable base	cognizable element
Therefore states which are not mental factors are classified under	*2 aggregates	12 bases	18 elements

### 4. States which are generated by consciousness (No. 6. (i) under Greater Intermediate Couplets)

The Chart shows that:

Mental factors 52 are classified under	feeling, perception, mental formation aggregates	cognizable base	cognizable element
Mind-produced matter 17 (this excludes sensitive eye, ear, nose, tongue, body) are classified under	matter aggregate	5 gross and cognizable bases	5 gross and cognizable elements
Therefore States which are generated by consciousness are classified under	4 aggregates	6 bases	6 elements



**5. States which are not derived (No. 13. (ii) under Greater Intermediate Couplets)**

The Chart shows that:

Consciousness 89 are classified under	consciousness aggregate feeling, perception, mental formation aggregates	mind base	7 consciousness elements
Mental factors 52 are classified under		cognizable base	cognizable element
Great primary matter 4 are classified under	matter aggregate	tangible object and cognizable bases	tangible object and cognizable elements
Nibbāna	(aggregate freed)	cognizable base	cognizable element
Therefore states which are not derived are classified under	5 aggregates	3 bases	9 elements

p. 30      *How to read the Chart*<sup>1</sup>: Matter aggregate is taken as illustration. Under how many aggregates, under how many bases and under how many elements is Matter aggregate classified? Matter aggregate is classified under 1 aggregate (matter aggregate), under 11 bases (10 gross bases and cognizable base) and under 11 elements (10 gross elements and cognizable element).

Under how many is it not classified? It is not classified under 4 aggregates (feeling, perception, mental formation and consciousness aggregates), under 1 base (mind base) and under 7 elements (7 consciousness elements).

---

<sup>1</sup>See Method of Chapter I: *The Classification Chart of Aggregates, Bases and Elements* on page 214.

**Internal Tables (*Abhantara Mātikā*)**

p. 31

	Aggregates	Bases	Elements
<b>Five Aggregates</b> <b>(<i>Pañcakkhandhā</i>)</b>			
1. Matter aggregate ( <i>Rūpakkhando</i> ) = 28 states of matter	1 <sup>1</sup>	11	11
2. Feeling aggregate ( <i>Vedanākkhandho</i> ) = Feeling mental factor	1	1	1
3. Perception aggregate ( <i>Saññākkhandho</i> ) = Perception mental factor	1	1	1
4. Mental formation aggregate ( <i>Saṅkhārakkhandho</i> ) = 50 remaining mental factors	1	1	1
5. Consciousness aggregate ( <i>Viññāṇakkhandho</i> ) = 89 consciousness	1	1	7
Aggregate freed ( <i>Khandha vimutto</i> ) = Nibbāna (thus Nibbāna is not classified as an aggregate)			

	Aggregates	Bases	Elements
<b>Twelve Bases</b> <b>(<i>Dvādasa āyatanāni</i>)</b>			
1. Eye base ( <i>Cakkhāyatanaṃ</i> ) = Sensitive eye	1	1	1
2. Ear base ( <i>Sotāyatanaṃ</i> ) = Sensitive ear	1	1	1
3. Nose base ( <i>Ghāṇāyatanaṃ</i> ) = Sensitive nose	1	1	1
4. Tongue base ( <i>Jivhāyatanaṃ</i> ) = Sensitive tongue	1	1	1
5. Body base ( <i>Kāyāyatanaṃ</i> ) = Sensitive body	1	1	1
6. Visible Object base ( <i>Rūpāyatanaṃ</i> ) = Visible object	1	1	1

<sup>1</sup>Matter aggregate is classified under 1 aggregate, 11 bases and 11 elements. There are altogether 5 aggregates, 12 bases and 18 elements. Therefore, matter aggregate is unclassified under the remaining 4 aggregates, 1 base and 7 elements. This is to be applied to all the other cases.

7.	Sound base ( <i>Saddāyatanaṃ</i> ) = Sound or audible object	1	1	1
8.	Odour base ( <i>Gandhāyatanaṃ</i> ) = Odour or olfactory object	1	1	1
9.	Taste base ( <i>Rasāyatanaṃ</i> ) = Taste or gustatory object	1	1	1
10.	Tangible Object base ( <i>Phoṭṭhabbāyatanaṃ</i> ) = Tangible object (Earth, heat, wind)	1	1	1
11.	Mind base ( <i>Manāyatanaṃ</i> ) = 89 consciousness	1	1	7
12.	Cognizable base ( <i>Dhammāyatanaṃ</i> ) = 52 mental factors, 16 subtle matter ( <i>i.e.</i> water, femininity, masculinity, heart basis, physical life, nutriment, separated space, bodily intimation, vocal intimation, buoyancy of matter, plasticity of matter, wieldiness of matter, growth, continuity, decay, impermanence) and Nibbāna	*4 <sup>1</sup>	1	1

**Eighteen Elements**  
**(*Aṭṭhārasa dhātuyo*)**

	Aggregates	Bases	Elements	
1.	Eye element ( <i>Cakkhu dhātu</i> ) = Sensitive eye	1	1	1
2.	Ear element ( <i>Sota dhātu</i> ) = Sensitive ear	1	1	1
3.	Nose element ( <i>Ghāna dhātu</i> ) = Sensitive nose	1	1	1
4.	Tongue element ( <i>Jivhā dhātu</i> ) = Sensitive tongue	1	1	1
5.	Body element ( <i>Kāya dhātu</i> ) = Sensitive body	1	1	1
6.	Visible Object element ( <i>Rūpa dhātu</i> ) = Visible object	1	1	1
7.	Sound element ( <i>Sadda dhātu</i> ) = Sound	1	1	1
8.	Odour element ( <i>Gandha dhātu</i> ) = Odour	1	1	1
9.	Taste element ( <i>Rasa dhātu</i> ) = Taste	1	1	1

<sup>1</sup>Nibbāna is not classified as an aggregate according to the Pali Text. “*Asaṅkataṃ khandhatotbapetvīā*”. This is signified by an asterisk in all the Aggregate columns.

10. Tangible object element ( <i>Phoṭṭhabba dhātu</i> ) = Tangible object	1	1	1
11. Eye consciousness element ( <i>Cakkhuvīññāṇa dhātu</i> ) = Eye cons. 2	1	1	1
12. Ear consciousness element ( <i>Sotaviññāṇa dhātu</i> ) = Ear cons. 2	1	1	1
13. Nose consciousness element ( <i>Ghānaviññāṇa dhātu</i> ) = Nose cons. 2	1	1	1
14. Tongue consciousness element ( <i>Jivhāviññāṇa dhātu</i> ) = Tongue cons. 2	1	1	1
15. Body consciousness element ( <i>Kāyaviññāṇa dhātu</i> ) = Body cons. 2	1	1	1
16. Mind element ( <i>Mano dhātu</i> ) = 5-door advertence; recipient 2	1	1	1
17. Mind consciousness element ( <i>Manoviññāṇa dhātu</i> ) = Remaining consciousness 76	1	1	1
18. Cognizable element ( <i>Dhamma dhātu</i> ) = 52 mental factors, 16 subtle matter and Nibbāna	4	1	1

**Four Truths**  
**(*Cattāri saccāni*)**

	Aggregates	Bases	Elements
1. Suffering truth ( <i>Dukkha saccam</i> ) = Mundane consciousness 81, greedless mental factors 52 excluding greed ( <i>i.e.</i> 52 – 1 = 51), matter 28	5	12	18
2. Origin truth ( <i>Samudaya saccam</i> ) = Greed mental factor	1	1	1
3. Cessation truth ( <i>Nirodha saccam</i> ) = Nibbāna	—	1	1
4. Path truth ( <i>Magga saccam</i> ) = 8 path factors present at 4 Path consciousness, namely: Right view, Right thought, Right speech, Right action, Right livelihood, Right endeavour, Right mindfulness, Right concentration	1	1	1

**Twenty-two Faculties**  
**(*Bāvīsatindriyāni*)**

	Aggregates	Bases	Elements
1. Eye faculty ( <i>Cakkhundriyaṃ</i> ) = Sensitive eye	1	1	1
2. Ear faculty ( <i>Sotindriyaṃ</i> ) = Sensitive ear	1	1	1
3. Nose faculty ( <i>Ghānindriyaṃ</i> ) = Sensitive nose	1	1	1
4. Tongue faculty ( <i>Jivhindriyaṃ</i> ) = Sensitive tongue	1	1	1
5. Body faculty ( <i>Kāyindriyaṃ</i> ) = Sensitive body	1	1	1
6. Female faculty ( <i>Itthindriyaṃ</i> ) = femininity	1	1	1
7. Male faculty ( <i>Purisindriyaṃ</i> ) = masculinity	1	1	1
8. Life faculty ( <i>Jivitindriyaṃ</i> ) = Physical and Psychical <sup>1</sup> life	2	1	1
9. Mind faculty ( <i>Manindriyaṃ</i> ) = 89 consciousness	1	1	7
10. Bodily pleasure faculty ( <i>Sukhindriyaṃ</i> ) = Feeling mental factor present at bodily pleasure consciousness	1	1	1
11. Bodily pain faculty ( <i>Dukkhindriyaṃ</i> ) = Feeling mental factor present at bodily pain consciousness	1	1	1
12. Mental joy faculty ( <i>Somanassindriyaṃ</i> ) = Feeling mental factor present at 62 mental joy consciousness	1	1	1
13. Grief faculty ( <i>Domanassindriyaṃ</i> ) = Feeling mental factor present at two hate-rooted consciousness	1	1	1
14. Indifference faculty ( <i>Upekkhindriyaṃ</i> ) = Feeling mental factor present at 55 indifference consciousness	1	1	1
15. Faith faculty ( <i>Saddhindriyaṃ</i> ) = Faith mental factor present at 59 beautiful consciousness	1	1	1
16. Energy faculty ( <i>Viriyaṃ</i> ) = Energy mental factor present at 89 consciousness excluding 2 x 5 consciousness 10, mind element 3, investigation consciousness 3 (i.e. 89 - 16 = 73)	1	1	1

p. 33

---

<sup>1</sup>Psychical life, the mental factor of life faculty, comes under the mental formation aggregate.

17. Mindfulness faculty ( <i>Satindriyaṃ</i> ) = Mindfulness mental factor present at 59 beautiful consciousness	1	1	1
18. Concentration faculty ( <i>Samahindriyaṃ</i> ) = One-pointedness mental factor present at 89 consciousness excluding doubt consciousness 1, 2 x 5 consciousness 10, mind element 3, investigation consciousness 3 ( <i>i.e.</i> 89 - 17 = 72)	1	1	1
19. Wisdom faculty ( <i>Paññindriyaṃ</i> ) = Wisdom mental factor present at 39 mundane three-rooted consciousness	1	1	1
20. I-shall-know-what-I-did-not-know faculty ( <i>Anañ-ñātanassāmitindriyaṃ</i> ) = Wisdom mental factor present at stream winning Path ( <i>i.e.</i> first Path)	1	1	1
21. Higher realization faculty ( <i>Aññindriyaṃ</i> ) = Wisdom mental factor present at three Higher Paths and three Lower Fruitions	1	1	1
22. He-who-has-known faculty ( <i>Aññātāvindriyaṃ</i> ) = Wisdom mental factor present at Arahatta Fruition	1	1	1

**Dependent Origination  
(*Paṭiccasamuppāda*) Factors 12,  
Kinds 16 (*Aṅga* 12, *Bheda* 16)**

	Aggregates	Bases	Elements
1. Ignorance ( <i>Avijjā</i> ) = Delusion mental factor present at 12 unwholesome consciousness	1	1	1
2. Conditioned by ignorance are the formations ( <i>Avijjāpaccayā saṅkhārā</i> ) = Volition mental factor present at 12 unwholesome consciousness and 17 mundane wholesome consciousness	1	1	1
3. Conditioned by formation is consciousness ( <i>Saṅkhārapaccaya-viññāṇaṃ</i> ) = 89 consciousness	1	1	7
4. Conditioned by consciousness is mentality-materiality ( <i>Viññāṇa-paccayā nāma-rūpaṃ</i> ) = Mental factors 52, matter 28	4	11	11

- |     |   |   |   |    |
|-----|---|---|---|----|
| 5.  | Conditioned by mentality-materiality are 6 bases<br>( <i>Nāma-rūpa-paccayā salāyatanaṃ</i> ) = 89 consciousness and 5 sensitive organs  | 2 | 6 | 12 |
| 6.  | Conditioned by 6 bases is contact ( <i>Salāyatana-paccayā phasso</i> ) = Contact mental factor present at 89 consciousness  | 1 | 1 | 1  |
| 7.  | Conditioned by contact is feeling ( <i>Phassa-paccayā vedanā</i> ) = Feeling mental factor present at 89 consciousness  | 1 | 1 | 1  |
| 8.  | Conditioned by feeling is craving ( <i>Vedanā-paccayā taṇhā</i> ) = Greed mental factor present at 8 greed-rooted consciousness   | 1 | 1 | 1  |
| 9.  | Conditioned by craving is clinging ( <i>Taṇhā-paccayā upādānaṃ</i> ) = Greed mental factor present at 8 greed-rooted consciousness and wrong-view mental factor present at 4 consciousness associated with wrong-view | 1 | 1 | 1  |
| 10. | Kamma becoming ( <i>Kamma bhavo</i> ) = Volition mental factor present at 12 unwholesome and 17 mundane wholesome consciousness   | 1 | 1 | 1  |

**Rebirth becoming 9**  
**(*Upapatti bhava* 9)**

Rebirth becoming (*Upapatti bhavo*) = Mundane resultants 32, mental factors 35, kamma-produced matter 20

- p. 34 (a) Sensuous becoming (*Kāma bhavo*) = Sensuous resultants 23, mental factors 38, excluding 3 abstinences and two illimitables (*i.e.* 38 - 5 = 33), kamma-produced matter 20



(b) Fine-material becoming ( <i>Rūpa bhavo</i> ) = Fine-material resultant 5, eye consciousness 2, ear consciousness 2, reception consciousness 2, investigation consciousness 3, mental factors 35, kamma-produced matter 20 excluding femininity, masculinity, nose, tongue and body ( <i>i.e.</i> 20 - 5 = 15)	5	5	8
(c) Immaterial becoming ( <i>Arūpa bhavo</i> ) = Immaterial resultant 4, mental factors 30	4	2	2
(d) Percepted becoming ( <i>Saññā bhavo</i> ) = Mundane resultant 32 excluding neither perception nor non-perception resultant 1 ( <i>i.e.</i> 32 - 1 = 31), mental factors 35, kamma-produced matter 20	5	11	17
(e) Non-percepted becoming ( <i>Asaññā bhavo</i> ) = Nine-fold vitality-group matter	1	2	2
(f) Neither perception nor non-perception becoming ( <i>Nevasaññā nā saññā bhavo</i> ) = Neither perception nor non-perception resultant 1, mental factors 30	4	2	2
(g) One-aggregate becoming ( <i>Ekavokāra bhavo</i> ) = Same as non-percepted becoming	1	2	2
(h) Four-aggregate becoming ( <i>Catuvokāra bhavo</i> ) = Same as immaterial becoming	4	2	2
(i) Five-aggregate becoming ( <i>Pañcavokāra bhavo</i> ) = Sensuous resultant 23, fine-material resultant 5, mental factors 35, kamma-produced matter 20	5	11	17
11. Birth ( <i>Jāti</i> ) = The arising of 18 produced matter is the birth of matter, the arising of 4 mental aggregates is the birth of mentality	2	1	1
12. Ageing ( <i>Jarā</i> ) = The oldness of 18 produced matter is the ageing of matter, the oldness of 4 mental aggregates is the ageing of mentality	2	1	1
(12) Death ( <i>Marāṇam</i> ) = The exhaustion of 18 produced matter is the death of matter, the exhaustion of 4 mental aggregates is the death of mentality	2	1	1
(12) Sorrow ( <i>Soko</i> ) = Grievous feeling present at 2 hate-rooted consciousness	1	1	1

(12) Lamentation ( <i>Paridevo</i> ) = Audible object born of perverted mind	1	1	1
(12) Suffering ( <i>Dukkham</i> ) = Feeling present at body-consciousness associated with suffering	1	1	1
(12) Grief ( <i>Domanassam</i> ) = Grievous feeling present at 2 hate-rooted consciousness	1	1	1
(12) Despair ( <i>Upāyāso</i> ) = Hate mental factor present at 2 hate-rooted consciousness	1	1	1

**The Applications of Mindfulness and Others 9**  
**(*Satipaṭṭhānādi* 9)**

Aggregates  
Bases  
Elements

The 4 applications of mindfulness ( <i>Cattāro satipaṭṭhānā</i> ) = Mindfulness mental factor present at 8 supramundane consciousness	1	1	1
The 4 great efforts ( <i>Cattāro sammappadhānā</i> ) = Energy mental factor present at 8 supramundane consciousness	1	1	1
The 4 roads to psychic power ( <i>Cattāro iddhipādā</i> ) = Intention, energy, consciousness and wisdom mental factors present at 8 supramundane consciousness	2	2	2
The 4 trances or Jhāna ( <i>Cattāri Jhānāni</i> ) = Applied-thought, sustained-thought, rapture, bliss and one-pointedness of mind	2	1	1
The 4 illimitable states ( <i>Cattasso appamaññāyo</i> ) = Mental factors of loving-kindness, compassion, sympathy which are present at first, second, third and fourth fine-material Jhānas and indifference mental factor present at fifth Jhāna	1	1	1
The 5 faculties ( <i>Pañcendriyani</i> ) = Faith, energy, mindfulness, one-pointedness and wisdom mental factors present at 8 supramundane consciousness	1	1	1

The 6 strengths ( <i>Pañcabalāni</i> ) = Faith, energy, mindfulness, one-pointedness and wisdom mental factors present at 8 supramundane consciousness	1	1	1
The 7 factors of Enlightenment ( <i>Satta bojjhaṅgā</i> ) = Mindfulness, wisdom, energy, rapture, tranquility (of mental factors and of consciousness), one-pointedness and equanimity mental factors present at 8 supramundane consciousness	1	1	1
The Noble Eightfold Path ( <i>Ariyo Aṭṭhaṅgiko Maggo</i> ) = Wisdom, applied-thought, the 3 abstinences, energy, mindfulness, and one-pointedness mental factors present at 4 Path-consciousness	1	1	1

		Aggregates	Bases	Elements
<b>Contact Group 7</b>				
1. Contact ( <i>Phasso</i> ) = Contact mental factor present at 89 consciousness	1	1	1	1
2. Feeling ( <i>Vedanā</i> ) = Feeling mental factor present at 89 Consciousness	1	1	1	1
3. Perception ( <i>Saññā</i> ) = Perception mental factor present at 89 consciousness	1	1	1	1
4. Volition ( <i>Cetanā</i> ) = Volition mental factor present at 89 consciousness	1	1	1	1
5. Consciousness ( <i>Cittaṃ</i> ) = 89 consciousness	1	1	7	
6. Decision ( <i>Adhimokkho</i> ) = Decision mental factor present at 89 consciousness excluding 2 x 5 consciousness 10 and doubt-accompanied consciousness ( <i>i.e.</i> 89 - 11 = 78)	1	1	1	
7. Attention ( <i>Manasikāro</i> ) = Attention mental factor present at 89 consciousness	1	1	1	

## External Tables (*Bāhira Mātikā*)

### I. Triplets 22 (*Tika* 22)

		Aggregates	Bases	Elements
	1. (i) Wholesome states ( <i>Kusalā dhammā</i> ) = Wholesome consciousness 21, mental factors 38	4	2	2
	(ii) Unwholesome states ( <i>Akusalā dhammā</i> ) = Unwholesome consciousness 12, mental factors 27	4	2	2
	(iii) Indeterminate states <sup>1</sup> ( <i>Abyākatā dhammā</i> ) = Resultant consciousness 36, inoperative consciousness 20, mental factors 38, matter 20 and Nibbāna	*5	12	18
p. 36	2. (i) States associated with pleasant feeling ( <i>Sukhāya vedanāya-sampayuttā dhammā</i> ) = Consciousness accompanied by pleasure 63, mental factors 52 excluding feeling, hate, envy, stinginess, worry and doubt ( <i>i.e.</i> 52 - 6 = 46)	3	2	3
	(ii) States associated with painful feeling ( <i>Dukkhāya vedanāya-sampayuttā dhammā</i> ) = Consciousness accompanied by pain 3, mental factors 27 excluding feeling, rapture, greed, wrong-view, conceit and doubt ( <i>i.e.</i> 27 - 6 = 21)	3	2	3
	(iii) States associated with feeling that is neither painful nor pleasant ( <i>Adukkhamasukhāya vedanāya sampayuttā dhammā</i> ) = Consciousness accompanied by indifference 55, mental factors 52 excluding feeling, rapture, hate, envy, worry and stinginess ( <i>i.e.</i> 52 - 6 = 46)	3	2	7
	3. (i) Resultant states ( <i>Vipākā dhammā</i> ) = Resultant consciousness 36, mental factors 38	4	2	8

<sup>1</sup>This means neither wholesome nor unwholesome.

(ii)	States producing resultant states ( <i>Vipāka dhamma dhammā</i> ) = Unwholesome consciousness 12, wholesome consciousness 21, mental factors 52	4	2	2
(iii)	States which are neither resultant nor producing resultant states ( <i>Nevavipāka navipāka dhamma dhammā</i> ) = Inoperative consciousness 20, mental factors 35, matter 28, Nibbāna	*5	12	13
4. (i)	States which are acquired by clinging and favourable to clinging ( <i>Upadinnupādāniyā dhammā</i> ) = Mundane resultant consciousness 32, mental factors 35, kamma-produced matter 20	5	11	17
(ii)	States which are not acquired by clinging but favourable to clinging ( <i>Anupadinnupādāniyā dhammā</i> ) = Unwholesome consciousness 12, mundane wholesome consciousness 17, inoperative consciousness 20, mental factors 52, mind-produced matter 17, temperature-produced matter 15, nutriment-produced matter 14	5	7	8
(iii)	States which are not acquired by clinging and not favourable to clinging ( <i>Anupādinna anupādāniyā dhammā</i> ) = Supramundane consciousness 8, mental factors 36, Nibbāna	*4	2	2
5. (i)	Corrupt and corrupting states ( <i>Samkiliṭṭha samkilesikā dhammā</i> ) = Unwholesome consciousness 12, mental factors 27	4	2	2
(ii)	Not corrupt but corrupting states ( <i>Asamkiliṭṭha samkilesikā dhammā</i> ) = Mundane wholesome consciousness 17, mundane resultant 32, inoperative consciousness 20, mental factors 38, matter 28	5	12	18
(iii)	Not Corrupt and not corrupting states ( <i>Asamkiliṭṭha-asamkilesikā dhammā</i> ) = Supramundane consciousness 8, mental factors 36, Nibbāna	*4	2	2

p. 37	6. (i) States with applied-thought and sustained-thought ( <i>Savittakka savicārā dhammā</i> ) = Consciousness with applied-thought and sustained-thought 55, mental factors 52 excluding applied-thought and sustained-thought ( <i>i.e.</i> $52 - 2 = 50$ )	4	2	3
	(ii) States without applied-thought but with sustained-thought ( <i>Avitakka vicāramattā dhammā</i> ) = Second Jhāna consciousness 11, mental factors 38 excluding applied-thought and sustained-thought ( <i>i.e.</i> $38 - 2 = 36$ ), 55 applied-thought mental factors present at 55 applied and sustained-thought consciousness	4	2	2
	(iii) States without applied-thought and sustained-thought ( <i>Avitakka avicārā dhammā</i> ) = 55 consciousness without applied-thought and without sustained-thought, mental factors 38 excluding applied-thought and sustained thought ( <i>i.e.</i> $38 - 2 = 36$ ), 11 sustained-thought mental factors present at 11 consciousness of the Second Jhāna, matter 28 and Nibbāna	*5	12	17
	7. (i) States accompanied by rapture ( <i>Pītisahagatā dhammā</i> ) = Consciousness accompanied by rapture 51, mental factors 52 excluding rapture, hate, envy, stinginess, worry and doubt ( <i>i.e.</i> $52 - 6 = 46$ )	4	2	2
	(ii) States accompanied by pleasure ( <i>Sukhasahagatā dhammā</i> ) = Consciousness accompanied by pleasure 63, mental factors 52 excluding feeling, rapture, hate, envy, stinginess, worry and doubt ( <i>i.e.</i> $52 - 6 = 46$ )	3	2	3
	(iii) States accompanied by indifference ( <i>Upekkhāsahagatā dhammā</i> ) = Consciousness accompanied by indifference 55, mental factors 52 excluding feeling, rapture, hate, envy, worry and stinginess ( <i>i.e.</i> $52 - 6 = 46$ )	3	2	7

- |        |  |    |    |    |
|--------|--|----|----|----|
| 8. (i) | States eradicated by First Path ( <i>Dassanena pahātabbā dhammā</i> ) = Consciousness rooted in greed 8, <sup>1</sup> consciousness rooted in hate 2, doubt consciousness 1, mental factors 27   | 4  | 2  | 2  |
| (ii)   | States eradicated by Higher 3 Paths ( <i>Bhāvanāya pahātabbā dhammā</i> ) = Consciousness <sup>2</sup> dissociated from wrong view 4, consciousness <sup>3</sup> rooted in hate 2, restlessness consciousness <sup>4</sup> 1, mental factors 27 excluding wrong-view and doubt ( <i>i.e.</i> 27 - 2 = 25)  | 4  | 2  | 2  |
| (iii)  | States eradicated neither by First Path nor by Higher 3 Paths ( <i>Nevadassanena na bhāvanāya pahātabbā dhammā</i> ) = Wholesome consciousness 21, resultant consciousness 36, inoperative consciousness 20, mental factors 38, matter 28 and Nibbāna  | *5 | 12 | 18 |
| 9. (i) | States together with roots eradicated by First Path ( <i>Dassanena pahātabbā hetukā dhammā</i> ) = Consciousness rooted in greed 8, consciousness rooted in hate 2, doubt consciousness 1, mental factors 27 excluding delusion present at doubt consciousness   | 4  | 2  | 2  |
| (ii)   | States together with roots eradicated by Higher 3 Paths ( <i>Bhāvanāya pahātabbā hetukā dhammā</i> ) = Consciousness dissociated from wrong-view 4, consciousness rooted in hate 2, restlessness consciousness 1, mental factors 27 excluding wrong-view, doubt and only delusion present at restlessness consciousness ( <i>i.e.</i> 27 - 2 = 25) | 4  | 2  | 2  |

---

<sup>1</sup>4 consciousness dissociated from wrong-view and 2 hate-rooted consciousness are not eradicated by First Path but these consciousness leading to the lower planes (*Apāya*) are annulled (*tanukara*) by First Path.

<sup>2</sup>1 and 2 attenuated by Second Path.

<sup>3</sup>2 eradicated by the Third Path.

<sup>4</sup>1 and 3 eradicated by the Fourth Path.

- (iii) States together with roots eradicated neither by First Path nor by Higher 3 Paths (*Nevadassanena na bhāvanāya pahātabbā hetukā dhammā*) = Wholesome consciousness 21, resultant consciousness 36, inoperative consciousness 20, mental factors 38, delusion present at 2 roots of delusion, matter 28 and Nibbāna \*5 12 18
10. (i) States leading to rebirth and death (*Ācayagāmino dhammā*) = Unwholesome consciousness 12, mundane wholesome consciousness 17, mental factors 52 4 2 2
- (ii) States leading to Nibbāna (*Apacayagāmino dhammā*) = Path consciousness 4, mental factors 36 4 2 2
- (iii) States leading neither to rebirth and death nor to Nibbāna (*Nevācayagāmināpacayagāmino dhammā*) = Resultant consciousness 36, inoperative consciousness 20, mental factors 38, matter 28, Nibbāna \*5 12 18
11. (i) States appertaining to Learners (*Sekkhā dhammā*) = 8 Supramundane consciousness excluding Arahatta Fruition, mental factors 36 4 2 2
- (ii) States appertaining to Arahatta (*Asekkhā dhammā*) = Arahatta Fruition consciousness 1, mental factors 36 4 2 2
- (iii) States appertaining to neither Learners nor Arahatta (*Nevasekkha-na-sekkhā dhammā*) = Mundane consciousness 81, mental factors 52, matter 28 and Nibbāna \*5 12 18
12. (i) Limited states (*Parittā dhammā*) = Sensuous consciousness 54, mental factors 52, matter 28 5 12 18
- (ii) Lofty states (*Mahāggatā dhammā*) = Lofty consciousness 27, mental factors 35 4 2 2
- (iii) Incomparable states (*Appamāṇā dhammā*) = Supramundane consciousness 8, mental factors 36 and Nibbāna \*4 2 2



- |         |  |    |    |     |
|---------|--|----|----|-----|
| 13. (i) | States with limited objects ( <i>Paritārammaṇā dhammā</i> ) = Sensuous consciousness 54, supernormal powers 2, mental factors 52   | 4  | 2  | 8   |
| (ii)    | States with lofty objects ( <i>Mahaggaṭārammaṇā dhammā</i> ) = Unwholesome consciousness 12, mind door advertence 1, great wholesome consciousness 8, great inoperative consciousness 8, infinity of consciousness 3, neither perception nor non-perception consciousness 3, supernormal powers 2, mental factors 52 excluding abstinences 3, illimitables 2 ( <i>i.e.</i> $52 - 5 = 47$ ) | 4  | 2  | 2   |
| (iii)   | States with incomparable objects ( <i>Ap-pamāṇārammaṇā dhammā</i> ) = Mind-door advertence consciousness 1, great wholesome consciousness 4 associated with knowledge, great inoperative consciousness 4 associated with knowledge, supernormal powers 2, supramundane consciousness 8, mental factors 38 excluding illimitables 2 ( <i>i.e.</i> $38 - 2 = 36$ )                           | 4  | 2  | 2   |
| 14. (i) | Low states ( <i>Hīnā dhammā</i> ) = Unwholesome consciousness 12, mental factors 27  | 4  | 2  | 2   |
| (ii)    | Medium states ( <i>Majjhimā dhammā</i> ) = Mundane wholesome consciousness 17, mundane resultant consciousness 32, inoperative consciousness 20, mental factors 38, matter 28  | 5  | 12 | 318 |
| (iii)   | Exalted states ( <i>Paṇītā dhammā</i> ) = Supramundane consciousness 8, mental factors 36, Nibbāna   | *4 | 2  | 2   |
| 15. (i) | States with fixed destiny due to wrong views ( <i>Micchattaniyatā dhammā</i> ) = Seventh impulsion of wrong-view associated consciousness 4, seventh impulsion of 2 hate consciousness, mental factors 27 excluding conceit and doubt ( <i>i.e.</i> $27 - 2 = 25$ )  | 4  | 2  | 2   |
| (ii)    | States with fixed destiny due to right views ( <i>Sammattaniyatā dhammā</i> ) = Path consciousness 4, mental factors 36  | 4  | 2  | 2   |

(iii)	States with no fixed destiny ( <i>Aniyatā dhammā</i> ) = 12 unwholesome consciousness excepting 7th impulses of (i) above, mundane wholesome consciousness 17, resultant consciousness 36, inoperative consciousness 20, mental factors 52, matter 28 and Nibbāna	*5	12	18
16. (i)	States with Path object ( <i>Maggārammaṇā dhammā</i> ) = Mind-door advertence consciousness 1, great wholesome consciousness associated with knowledge 4, great inoperative consciousness associated with knowledge 4, supernormal powers 2, mental factors 38 excluding abstinences 3, and illimitables 2 ( <i>i.e.</i> 38 - 5 = 33)	4	2	2
(ii)	States conditioned by the Path ( <i>Maggahetukā dhammā</i> ) = Path consciousness 4, mental factors 38 excluding 2 illimitables ( <i>i.e.</i> 38 - 2 = 36)	4	2	2
(iii)	States dominated by the Path ( <i>Maggādhipatino dhammā</i> ) = Great wholesome consciousness associated with knowledge 4, great inoperative consciousness associated with knowledge 4, Path consciousness 4, mental factors 38 excluding illimitables 2 ( <i>i.e.</i> 38 - 2 = 36)	4	2	2
17. (i)	States arisen ( <i>Uppannā dhammā</i> ) = Present consciousness 89, mental factors 52, matter 28	5	12	18
(ii)	States not arisen ( <i>Anuppannā dhammā</i> ) = Future unwholesome consciousness 12, wholesome consciousness 21, inoperative consciousness 20, mental factors 52, mind-produced matter 17, temperature-produced matter 15, nutriment-produced matter 14	5	7	8
(iii)	States bound to arise ( <i>Uppādino dhammā</i> ) = Future resultant consciousness 36, mental factors 38, kamma-produced matter 20	5	11	17
18. (i)	Past states ( <i>Atītā dhammā</i> ) = Past consciousness 89, mental factors 52, matter 28	5	12	18

	(ii)	Future states ( <i>Anāgatā dhammā</i> ) = Future consciousness 89, mental factors 52, matter 28	5	12	18
	(iii)	Present states ( <i>Paccuppannā dhammā</i> ) = Present consciousness 89, mental factors 52, matter 28	5	12	18
19.	(i)	States with past object ( <i>Atītārammaṇā dhammā</i> ) = Mind-door advertence consciousness 1, sensuous impulsions 29, registering consciousness 11, supernormal powers 2, infinity of consciousness 3, neither perception nor non-perception consciousness 3, mental factors 52 excluding abstinences 3, and illimitables 2 ( <i>i.e.</i> 52 - 5 = 47)	4	2	2
	(ii)	States with future object ( <i>Anāgatārammaṇā dhammā</i> ) = Mind-door advertence consciousness 1, sensuous impulsions 29, registering consciousness 11, supernormal powers 2, mental factors 52 excluding illimitables 2 ( <i>i.e.</i> 52 - 2 = 50)	4	2	2
	(iii)	States with present object ( <i>Paccuppannārammaṇā dhammā</i> ) = 2 x 5 consciousness 10, mind element 3, mind-door advertence consciousness 1, sensuous impulsions 29, registering consciousness 11, supernormal powers 2, mental factors 52 excluding illimitables 2 ( <i>i.e.</i> 52 - 2 = 50)	4	2	8
20.	(i)	Internal states ( <i>Ajjhattā dhammā</i> ) = Consciousness 89, mental factors 52, matter 28	5	12	18
	(ii)	External states ( <i>Bahiddhā dhammā</i> ) = Consciousness 89, mental factors 52, matter 28 and Nibbāna	*5	12	18
	(iii)	Internal and external states ( <i>Ajjhattā bahiddhā dhammā</i> ) = Consciousness 89, mental factors 52, matter 28	5	12	18
21.	(i)	States with internal object ( <i>Ajjhattārammaṇā dhammā</i> ) = Sensuous consciousness 54, Supernormal powers 2, infinity of consciousness 3, neither perception nor non-perception consciousness 3, mental factors 52 excluding envy and illimitables 2 ( <i>i.e.</i> 52 - 3 = 49)	4	2	8

(ii)	States with external object ( <i>Bahiddhārammaṇā dhammā</i> ) = Sensuous consciousness 54, supernormal powers 2, fine-material consciousness 15 excluding 2 supernormal powers, infinity of space 3, supramundane consciousness 8, mental factors 52 excluding stinginess ( <i>i.e.</i> $52 - 1 = 51$ )	4	2	8
(iii)	States with internal and external object ( <i>Ajjhattā bahiddhārammaṇā dhammā</i> ) = Sensuous consciousness 54, supernormal powers 2, mental factors 52 excluding stinginess, envy and illimitables 2 ( <i>i.e.</i> $52 - 4 = 48$ )	4	2	8
22. (i)	States both visible and impinging ( <i>Sanidassanā sappaṭighā dhammā</i> ) = Visible object	1	1	1
(ii)	States invisible but impinging ( <i>Anidassana-sappaṭighā dhammā</i> ) = Gross matter 12 excluding visible object ( <i>i.e.</i> $12 - 1 = 11$ )	1	9	9
(iii)	States not visible and not impinging ( <i>Anidassana-appaṭighā dhammā</i> ) = Consciousness 89, mental factors 52, subtle matter 16 and Nibbāna	*5	2	8

## II. Couplets 100 (*Duka* 100)

### I. Root Clusters 6 (*Hetu gocchakaṃ* 6)

		Aggregates	Bases	Elements
1. (i)	States which are roots ( <i>Hetū dhammā</i> ) = 6 states of roots namely: greed, hate, delusion, non-greed, non-hate, non-delusion	1	1	1
(ii)	States which are not roots ( <i>Nahetū dhammā</i> ) = Consciousness 89, mental factors 52 excluding 6 roots, matter 28, Nibbāna	*5	12	18

2. (i)	States which have associated roots ( <i>Sahetukā dhammā</i> ) = Consciousness which have associated roots 71, mental factors 52 excluding delusion from two delusion-rooted consciousness	4	2	p. 42
(ii)	States which have no roots ( <i>Ahetukā dhammā</i> ) = Consciousness without roots 18, mental factors 13 <sup>1</sup> excluding intention, delusion present at 2 delusion-rooted consciousness, matter 28, Nibbāna	*5	12	18
3. (i)	States which are associated with roots ( <i>Hetu sampayuttā dhammā</i> ) = same as 2. (i) above	4	2	2
(ii)	States which are dissociated from roots ( <i>Hetu vip-payuttā dhammā</i> ) = same as 2. (ii) above	*5	12	18
4. (i)	States which are roots and also have associated roots ( <i>Hetū ceva sa-hetukā ca dhammā</i> ) = 6 roots excluding delusion present at two delusion-rooted consciousness	1	1	1
(ii)	States which have associated roots but are not roots ( <i>Sahetukā ceva na ca hetū dhammā</i> ) = Consciousness which have associated roots 71, mental factors 52 excluding 6 roots	4	2	2
5. (i)	States which are roots and also associated with roots ( <i>Hetū ceva hetu sampayuttā dhammā</i> ) = same as 4. (i) above	1	1	1
(ii)	States which are associated with roots but are not roots ( <i>Hetu sampayuttā ceva na ca hetū dhammā</i> ) = same as 4. (ii) above	4	2	2
6. (i)	States which are not roots but have associated roots ( <i>Nahetu sahetukā dhammā</i> ) = same as 4. (ii) above	4	2	2
(ii)	States which are neither roots nor have associated roots ( <i>Nahetu ahetukā dhammā</i> ) = same as 2. (ii) above	*5	12	18

---

<sup>1</sup>13 mental factors are 7 primary (*Sabba citta sādharmaṇa*) and 6 secondary (*Pakiṇṇaka*) mental factors.

**II. Lesser Intermediate Couplets 7**  
**(Cūlantara dukkaṃ 7)**

		Aggregates	Bases	Elements
1. (i)	States arising from 4 causes ( <i>Sappaccayā dhammā</i> ) = Consciousness 89, mental factors 52, matter 28	5	12	18
(ii)	States not arising from 4 causes ( <i>Appaccayā dhammā</i> ) = Nibbāna	—	1	1
2. (i)	States conditioned by 4 causes ( <i>Saṅkhatā dhammā</i> ) = same as 1. (i) above	5	12	18
(ii)	States not conditioned by 4 causes ( <i>A-saṅkhatā dhammā</i> ) = same as 1. (ii) above	—	1	1
3. (i)	States with visibility ( <i>Sa-nidassanā dhammā</i> ) = visible object	1	1	1
(ii)	States without visibility ( <i>A-nidassanā dhammā</i> ) = Consciousness 89, mental factors 52, matter 28 excluding visible object ( <i>i.e.</i> 28 - 1 = 27), and Nibbāna	*5	11	17
4. (i)	States with impinging ( <i>Sappaṭighā dhammā</i> ) = Gross matter 12	1	10	10
(ii)	States without impinging ( <i>Appaṭighā dhammā</i> ) = Consciousness 89, mental factors 52, subtle matter 16 and Nibbāna	*5	2	8
p. 42 5. (i)	States which have physical change ( <i>Rūpino dhammā</i> ) = Matter 28	1	11	11
(ii)	States which have no physical change ( <i>Arūpino dhammā</i> ) = Consciousness 89, mental factors 52 and Nibbāna	*4	2	2
6. (i)	States which are mundane ( <i>Lokiyā dhammā</i> ) = Mundane consciousness 81, mental factors 52 and matter 28	5	12	8
(ii)	States which are Supramundane ( <i>Lokuttarā dhammā</i> ) = Supramundane consciousness 8, mental factors 36 and Nibbāna	*4	2	2

- |        |   |    |    |   |
|--------|---|----|----|---|
| 7. (i) | States cognizable by any one of the eye-consciousness, etc. ( <i>Kenaciviññeyyā dhammā</i> ) = Consciousness 89, mental factors 52, matter 28 and Nibbāna         | *5 | 12 | 8 |
| (ii)   | States not cognizable by any one of the eye-consciousness, etc. ( <i>Kenaci na viññeyyā dhammā</i> ) = Consciousness 89, mental factors 52, matter 28 and Nibbāna | *5 | 12 | 8 |

**III. Canker Clusters 6**  
**(*Āsava gocchakaṃ* 6)**

- |        |  | Aggregates | Bases | Elements |
|--------|--|------------|-------|----------|
| 1. (i) | States which are cankers ( <i>Āsavā dhammā</i> ) = Greed, wrong-view and delusion  | 1          | 1     | 1        |
| (ii)   | States which are not cankers ( <i>No āsavā dhammā</i> ) = Consciousness 89, mental factors 52 excluding 3 states of cankers ( <i>i.e.</i> 52 - 3 = 49), matter 28 and Nibbāna  | *5         | 12    | 18       |
| 2. (i) | States which are objects of cankers ( <i>Sāsavā dhammā</i> ) = Mundane consciousness 81, mental factors 52 and matter 28   | 5          | 12    | 18       |
| (ii)   | States which are not objects of cankers ( <i>A-nāsavā dhammā</i> ) = Supramundane consciousness 8, mental factors 36 and Nibbāna   | *4         | 2     | 2        |
| 3. (i) | States which are associated with cankers ( <i>Āsavasampayuttā dhammā</i> ) = Unwholesome consciousness 12, mental factors 27 excluding delusion present at 2 hate-rooted consciousness and 2 delusion-rooted consciousness | 4          | 2     | 2        |

	(ii)	States which are dissociated from cankers ( <i>Āsavā vippayuttā dhammā</i> ) = Wholesome consciousness 21, resultant 36, inoperative 20, mental factors 38, delusion present at 2 hate-rooted consciousness and 2 delusion-rooted consciousness, matter 28 and Nibbāna	*5	12	18
	4. (i)	States which are both cankers and objects of cankers ( <i>Āsavā ceva sāsavā ca dhammā</i> ) = 3 states of cankers namely: greed, wrong-view and delusion	1	1	1
	(ii)	States which are objects of cankers but not cankers ( <i>Sāsavā ceva no ca āsavā dhammā</i> ) = Mundane consciousness 81, mental factors 52 excluding 3 states of cankers ( <i>i.e.</i> 52 - 3 = 49) and matter 28	5	12	18
	5. (i)	States which are both cankers and associated with cankers ( <i>Āsavā ceva āsava sampayuttā ca dhammā</i> ) = 3 cankers namely: greed, wrong-view and delusion present at 8 greed-rooted consciousness	1	1	1
	(ii)	States which are associated with cankers but are not cankers ( <i>Āsavā sampayuttā ceva no ca asavā dhammā</i> ) = Unwholesome consciousness 12, mental factors 27 excluding 3 cankers ( <i>i.e.</i> 27 - 3 = 24)	4	2	2
p. 43	6. (i)	States which are dissociated from cankers but are objects of cankers ( <i>Āsavā vippayuttā sāsavā dhammā</i> ) = Mundane wholesome consciousness 17, mundane resultant 32, inoperative 20, mental factors 38, delusion present at 2 hate-rooted and 2 delusion-rooted consciousness and matter 28	5	12	18
	(ii)	States which are dissociated from cankers and are not objects of cankers ( <i>Āsavā vippayuttā anāsavā dhammā</i> ) = Supramundane consciousness 8, mental factors 36 and Nibbāna	*4	2	2



		Aggregates	Bases	Elements
<b>IV. Fetter Clusters 6</b>				
<b>(<i>Samyojana gocchakaṃ</i> 6)<sup>1</sup></b>				
1. (i)	States which are fetters ( <i>Samyojanā dhammā</i> ) = 8 states of fetters namely: greed, hate, conceit, wrong-view, doubt, envy, stinginess and delusion	1	1	1
(ii)	States which are not fetters ( <i>No samyojanā dhammā</i> ) = Consciousness 89, mental factors 52 excluding 8 fetters ( <i>i.e.</i> 52 - 8 = 44), matter 28 and Nibbāna	*5	12	18
2. (i)	States which are objects of fetters ( <i>Samyojaniyā dhammā</i> ) = Mundane consciousness 81, mental factors 52 and matter 28	5	12	18
(ii)	States which are not objects of fetters ( <i>Asamyojaniyā dhammā</i> ) = Supramundane consciousness 8, mental factors 36 and Nibbāna	*4	2	2
3. (i)	States which are associated with fetters ( <i>Samyojana sampayuttā dhammā</i> ) = Unwholesome consciousness 12, mental factors 27 excluding delusion present at restlessness-accompanied consciousness	4	2	2
(ii)	States which are dissociated from fetters ( <i>Samyojana vippayuttā dhammā</i> ) = Wholesome consciousness 21, resultant 36, inoperative 20, mental factors 38, delusion present at restlessness-accompanied consciousness, matter 28 and Nibbāna	*5	12	18
4. (i)	States which are both fetters and objects of fetters ( <i>Samyojanā ceva samyojaniyā ca dhammā</i> ) = 8 states of fetters	1	1	1

---

<sup>1</sup>Only mentioned and not expanded.

	(ii)	States which are objects of fetters but are not fetters ( <i>Samyojaniyā ceva no ca samyojanā dhammā</i> ) = Mundane consciousness 81, mental factors 52 excluding 8 states of fetters ( <i>i.e.</i> 52 – 8 = 44) and matter 28	5	12	18
	5. (i)	States which are both fetters and associated with fetters ( <i>Samyojanā ceva samyojana sampayuttā ca dhammā</i> ) = 8 states of fetters excluding delusion present at restlessness-accompanied consciousness	1	1	1
	(ii)	States which are associated with fetters but are not fetters ( <i>Samyojanā sampayuttā ceva no ca samyojanā dhammā</i> ) = Unwholesome consciousness 12, mental factors 27 excluding 8 states of fetters ( <i>i.e.</i> 27 – 8 = 19)	4	2	2
	6. (i)	States which are dissociated from fetters but are objects of fetters ( <i>Samyojana vippayuttā samyojaniyā dhammā</i> ) = Mundane wholesome consciousness 17, mundane resultant 32, inoperative 20, mental factors 38, delusion present at restlessness-accompanied consciousness and matter 28	5	12	18
p. 44	(ii)	States which are dissociated from fetters and are not objects of fetters ( <i>Samyojana vippayuttā a-samyojaniyā dhammā</i> ) – Supramundane consciousness 8, mental factors 36 and Nibbāna	*4	2	2

### V. Tie Clusters 6

#### (*Ganthā gocchakaṃ* 6)<sup>1</sup>

		Aggregates	Bases	Elements
1. (i)	States which are ties ( <i>Ganthā dhammā</i> ) = 3 states of ties namely: greed, hate and wrong-view	1	1	1

<sup>1</sup>Not expanded in the Text.

- |        |   |    |    |    |
|--------|---|----|----|----|
| (ii)   | States which are not ties ( <i>No ganthā dhammā</i> ) = Consciousness 89, mental factors 52 excluding 3 states of ties ( <i>i.e.</i> $52 - 3 = 49$ ), matter 28 and Nibbāna   | *5 | 12 | 18 |
| 2. (i) | States which are objects of ties ( <i>Ganthaniyā dhammā</i> ) = Mundane consciousness 81, mental factors 52 and matter 28   | 5  | 12 | 18 |
| (ii)   | States which are not objects of ties ( <i>A-ganthaniyā dhammā</i> ) = Supramundane consciousness 8, mental factors 36 and Nibbāna   | *4 | 2  | 2  |
| 3. (i) | States which are associated with ties ( <i>Gantha sampayuttā dhammā</i> ) = Greed-rooted consciousness 8, hate-rooted consciousness 2, mental factors 27 excluding greed present at 4 consciousness dissociated from wrong-view, hate present at 2 hate-rooted consciousness and doubt ( <i>i.e.</i> $27 - 2 = 25$ )  | 4  | 2  | 2  |
| (ii)   | States which are dissociated from ties ( <i>Gantha vip-payuttā dhammā</i> ) = Delusion-rooted consciousness 2, wholesome consciousness 21, resultant 36, inoperative 20, mental factors 52 excluding greed, wrong-view, conceit, hate, envy, stinginess, worry, sloth, torpor ( <i>i.e.</i> $52 - 9 = 43$ ), greed present at 4 consciousness dissociated from wrong-view, hate present at 2 hate-rooted consciousness, matter 28 and Nibbāna | *5 | 12 | 18 |
| 4. (i) | States which are both ties and objects of ties ( <i>Ganthā ceva ganthaniyā ca dhammā</i> ) = 3 states of ties   | 1  | 1  | 1  |
| (ii)   | States which are objects of ties but are not ties ( <i>Ganthaniyā ceva no ca ganthā dhammā</i> ) = Mundane consciousness 81, mental factors 52 excluding 3 states of ties ( <i>i.e.</i> $52 - 3 = 49$ ) and matter 28   | 5  | 12 | 18 |

- |        |   |    |    |    |
|--------|---|----|----|----|
| 5. (i) | States which are both ties and associated with ties<br>( <i>Ganthā ceva gantha sampayuttā ca dhammā</i> ) =<br>2 states of ties namely: greed and wrong-view<br>present at 4 consciousness associated with wrong-<br>view   | 1  | 1  | 1  |
| (ii)   | States which are associated with ties but are not ties<br>( <i>Gantha sampayuttā ceva no ca ganthā dhammā</i> )<br>= Greed-rooted consciousness 8, hate-rooted con-<br>sciousness 2, mental factors 27 excluding 3 states of<br>ties and doubt ( <i>i.e.</i> 27 - 4 = 23)   | 4  | 2  | 2  |
| 6. (i) | States which are dissociated from ties but are<br>objects of ties ( <i>Gantha vippayuttā ganthaniyā</i><br><i>dhammā</i> ) = Delusion-rooted consciousness 2, mun-<br>dane wholesome consciousness 17, mundane resul-<br>tant 32, inoperative 20, mental factors 52 excluding<br>greed, wrong-view, conceit, hate, envy, stinginess,<br>worry, sloth and torpor ( <i>i.e.</i> 52 - 9 = 43), greed<br>present at 4 consciousness dissociated from wrong-<br>view, hate present at 2 hate-rooted consciousness<br>and matter 28 | 5  | 12 | 18 |
| (ii)   | States which are dissociated from ties and are not<br>objects of ties ( <i>Gantha vippayuttā a-ganthaniyā</i><br><i>dhammā</i> ) = Supramundane consciousness 8, men-<br>tal factors 36 and Nibbāna   | *4 | 2  | 2  |

p. 45

## VI. Flood Clusters 6 (*Ogha gocchakaṃ 6*)<sup>1</sup>

## VII. Bond Clusters 6 (*Yoga gocchakaṃ 6*)<sup>2</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup>They are the same as Canker clusters.

<sup>2</sup>They are the same as Canker clusters.

	Aggregates	Bases	Elements
<b>VIII. Hindrance Clusters 6</b>			
<b>(<i>Nīvaraṇa gocchakaṃ</i> 6)<sup>1</sup></b>			
1. (i) States which are hindrances ( <i>Nīvaraṇā dhammā</i> ) = 8 states of hindrances namely: greed, hate, sloth, torpor, restlessness, worry, doubt and delusion	1	1	1
(ii) States which are not hindrances ( <i>No nīvaraṇā dhammā</i> ) = Consciousness 89, mental factors 52 excluding 8 states of hindrances ( <i>i.e.</i> 52 – 8 = 44), matter 28 and Nibbāna	*5	12	18
2. (i) States which are objects of hindrances ( <i>Nīvaraṇiyā dhammā</i> ) = Mundane consciousness 81, mental factors 52 and matter 28	5	12	18
(ii) States which are not objects of hindrances ( <i>A-nīvaraṇiyā dhammā</i> ) = Supramundane consciousness 8, mental factors 36 and Nibbāna	*4	2	2
3. (i) States which are associated with hindrances ( <i>Nīvaraṇa sampayuttā dhammā</i> ) = Unwholesome consciousness 12, mental factors 27	4	2	2
(ii) States which are dissociated from hindrances ( <i>Nīvaraṇā viprayuttā dhammā</i> ) = Wholesome consciousness 21, resultant 36, inoperative 20, mental factors 38, matter 28, Nibbāna	*5	12	18
4. (i) States which are both hindrances and objects of hindrances ( <i>Nīvaraṇā ceva nīvaraṇiyā ca dhammā</i> ) = 8 states of hindrances	1	1	1
(ii) States which are objects of hindrances but are not hindrances ( <i>Nīvaraṇiyā ceva no ca nīvaraṇā dhammā</i> ) = Mundane consciousness 81, mental factors 52 excluding 8 states of hindrances ( <i>i.e.</i> 52 – 8 = 44) and matter 28	5	12	18

---

<sup>1</sup>Not expanded in the Text.

	5. (i)	States which are both hindrances and associated with hindrances ( <i>Nīvaraṇā ceva nīvaraṇa sampayuttā ca dhammā</i> ) = 8 states of hindrances	1	1	1
	(ii)	States which are associated with hindrances but are not hindrances ( <i>Nīvaraṇa sampayuttā ceva no ca nīvaraṇā dhammā</i> ) = Unwholesome consciousness 12, mental factors 27 excluding 8 states of hindrances ( <i>i.e.</i> 27 - 8 = 19)	4	2	2
p. 46	6. (i)	States which are dissociated from hindrances but are objects of hindrances ( <i>Nīvaraṇa vippayuttā nīvaraṇiyā dhammā</i> ) = Mundane wholesome consciousness 17, mundane resultant 32, inoperative 20, mental factors 38 and matter 28	5	12	18
	(ii)	States which are dissociated from hindrances and are not objects of hindrances ( <i>Nīvaraṇa vippayuttā no nīvaraṇiyā dhammā</i> ) = Supramundane consciousness 8, mental factors 36 and Nibbāna	*4	2	2

### IX. Misapprehension Clusters 5 (*Parāmāsa gocchakaṃ 5*)

			Aggregates	Bases	Elements
	1. (i)	States which are misapprehensions ( <i>Parāmāsā dhammā</i> ) = Misapprehension state which is wrong-view	1	1	1
	(ii)	States which are not misapprehensions ( <i>No parāmāsā dhammā</i> ) = Consciousness 89, mental factors 52 excluding wrong-view ( <i>i.e.</i> 52 - 1 = 51), matter 28 and Nibbāna	*5	12	18
	2. (i)	States which are objects of misapprehensions ( <i>Parāmaṭṭhā dhammā</i> ) = Mundane consciousness 81, mental factors 52 and matter 28	5	12	18
	(ii)	States which are not objects of misapprehensions ( <i>A-parāmaṭṭhā dhammā</i> ) = Supramundane consciousness 8, mental factors 36 and Nibbāna	*4	2	2

- |        |   |    |    |    |
|--------|---|----|----|----|
| 3. (i) | States which are associated with misapprehensions ( <i>Parāmāsa sampayuttā dhammā</i> ) = Consciousness 4 accompanied with wrong-view, mental factors 27 excluding wrong-view, conceit, hate, envy, stinginess, worry and doubt ( <i>i.e.</i> $27 - 7 = 20$ )   | 4  | 2  | 2  |
| (ii)   | States which are dissociated from misapprehensions ( <i>Parāmāsa vippayuttā dhammā</i> ) = Consciousness 4 dissociated from wrong-view, hate-rooted consciousness 2, delusion-rooted consciousness 2, wholesome consciousness 21, resultant consciousness 36, inoperative consciousness 20, mental factors 52 excluding wrong-view ( <i>i.e.</i> $52 - 1 = 51$ ), matter 28 and Nibbāna   | *5 | 12 | 18 |
| 4. (i) | States which are both misapprehensions and objects of misapprehensions ( <i>Parāmāsā ceva parāmaṭṭhā ca dhammā</i> ) = Misapprehension state which is wrong-view  | 1  | 1  | 1  |
| (ii)   | States which are objects of misapprehensions but are not misapprehensions ( <i>Parāmaṭṭhā ceva no ca parāmāsā dhammā</i> ) = Mundane consciousness 81, mental factors 52 excluding wrong-view ( <i>i.e.</i> $52 - 1 = 51$ ) and matter 28   | 5  | 12 | 18 |
| 5. (i) | States which are dissociated from misapprehensions but are objects of misapprehensions ( <i>Parāmāsa vippayuttā parāmaṭṭhā dhammā</i> ) = Consciousness 4 dissociated from wrong-view, hate-rooted consciousness 2, delusion-rooted consciousness 2, mundane wholesome consciousness 17, mundane resultant consciousness 32, inoperative consciousness 20, mental factors 52 excluding wrong-view ( <i>i.e.</i> $52 - 1 = 51$ ) and matter 28 | 5  | 12 | 18 |

p. 47

- (ii) States which are dissociated from misapprehensions and are not objects of misapprehensions (*Parāmāsa vippayuttā a-parāmatṭhā dhammā*) = Supramundane consciousness 8, mental factors 36 and Nibbāna

		Aggregates	Bases	Elements
<b>X. Greater Intermediate Couplets 14</b>				
<b>(Mahāntara dukkaṃ 14)</b>				
1. (i)	States which have objects ( <i>Sārammaṇā dhammā</i> ) = Consciousness 89 and mental factors 52	4	2	8
(ii)	States which have no objects ( <i>Anārammaṇā dhammā</i> ) = Matter 28 and Nibbāna	*1	11	11
2. (i)	States which are consciousness ( <i>Cittā dhammā</i> ) = Consciousness 89	1	1	7
(ii)	States which are not consciousness ( <i>No citta dhammā</i> ) = mental factors 52, matter 28 and Nibbāna	*4	11	11
3. (i)	States which are mental factors ( <i>Cetasikā dhammā</i> ) = mental factors 52	3	1	1
(ii)	States which are not mental factors ( <i>A-cetasikā dhammā</i> ) = Consciousness 89, matter 28 and Nibbāna	*2	12	18
4. (i)	States which are associated with consciousness ( <i>Citta-sampayuttā dhammā</i> ) = Mental factors 52	3	1	1
(ii)	States which are dissociated from consciousness ( <i>Citta-vippayuttā dhammā</i> ) = Matter 28 and Nibbāna	*1	11	11
5. (i)	States which are conjoined with consciousness ( <i>Citta-saṃsaṭṭhā dhammā</i> ) = same as 4. (i) above	3	1	1
(ii)	States which are not conjoined with consciousness ( <i>Citta-visaṃsaṭṭhā dhammā</i> ) = same as 4. (ii) above	*1	11	11



6. (i)	States which are generated by consciousness ( <i>Citta-samuṭṭhānā dhammā</i> ) = Mental factors 52 and mind-produced matter 17	4	6	6
(ii)	States which are not generated by consciousness ( <i>No-citta-samuṭṭhānā dhammā</i> ) = Consciousness 89, kamma-produced matter 20, temperature-produced matter 15, nutriment-produced matter 14 and Nibbāna	*2	12	18
7. (i)	States which arise together with consciousness ( <i>Citta-sahabhuno dhammā</i> ) = mental factors 52, and intimations 2	4	1	1
(ii)	States which do not arise together with consciousness ( <i>No-citta-sahabhuno dhammā</i> ) = Consciousness 89, matter 28 excluding 2 intimations ( <i>i.e.</i> 28 - 2 = 26) and Nibbāna	*2	12	18
8. (i)	States which arise successively with consciousness ( <i>Cittā-nuparivattino dhammā</i> ) = same as 7. (i) above	4	1	1
(ii)	States which do not arise successively with consciousness ( <i>No-cittā-nuparivattino dhammā</i> ) = same as 7. (ii) above	*2	12	18
9. (i)	States which are both conjoined with and are generated by consciousness ( <i>Citta-saṃsaṭṭha-samuṭṭhānā dhammā</i> ) = same as 3. (i) above	3	1	1
(ii)	States which are not conjoined with and are not generated by consciousness ( <i>No-citta-saṃsaṭṭha-samuṭṭhānā dhammā</i> ) = same as 3. (ii) above	*2	12	18
10. (i)	States which are conjoined with, are generated by and arise together with consciousness ( <i>Citta-saṃsaṭṭha samuṭṭhānā sahabhuno dhammā</i> ) = same as 9. (i) above	3	1	1
(ii)	States which are not conjoined with, are not generated by and do not arise together with consciousness ( <i>No-citta-saṃsaṭṭha-samuṭṭhānā-sahabhuno dhammā</i> ) = same as 9. (ii) above	*2	12	18

- |         |   |    |    |    |
|---------|---|----|----|----|
| 11. (i) | States which are conjoined with, are generated by and arise successively with consciousness ( <i>Citta-saṃsaṭṭha-samuṭṭhānā-nuparivattino dhammā</i> ) = same as 9. (i) above   | 3  | 1  | 1  |
| (ii)    | States which are not conjoined with, are not generated by and do not arise successively with consciousness ( <i>No-citta-saṃsaṭṭha-samuṭṭhānā-nuparivattino dhammā</i> ) = same as 9. (ii) above  | *2 | 12 | 18 |
| 12. (i) | States which are internal ( <i>Ajjhattikā dhammā</i> ) = Consciousness 89, sensitive matter 5   | 2  | 6  | 12 |
| (ii)    | States which are external ( <i>Bāhirā dhammā</i> ) = Mental factors 52, matter 28 excluding 5 sensitive matter ( <i>i.e.</i> 28 - 5 = 23) and Nibbāna   | *4 | 6  | 6  |
| 13. (i) | States which are derived ( <i>Upādā dhammā</i> ) = Derived matter 24  | 1  | 10 | 10 |
| (ii)    | States which are not derived ( <i>No-upādā dhammā</i> ) = Consciousness 89, mental factors 52, great primary matter 4 and Nibbāna   | *5 | 3  | 9  |
| 14. (i) | States which are acquired by clinging ( <i>Upādinna dhammā</i> ) = Mundane resultant consciousness 32, mental factors 35 and kamma-produced matter 20   | 5  | 11 | 17 |
| (ii)    | States which are not acquired by clinging ( <i>Anupādinna dhammā</i> ) = Unwholesome consciousness 12, wholesome consciousness 21, inoperative consciousness 20, Fruition consciousness 4, mental factors 52, mind-produced matter 17, temperature-produced matter 15, nutriment-produced matter 14 and Nibbāna | *5 | 7  | 8  |

		Aggregates	Bases	Elements
<b>XI. Clinging Clusters 6</b> <b>(<i>Upādāna gocchakaṃ</i> 6<sup>1</sup>)</b>				
1.	(i) States which are clinging ( <i>Upādānā dhammā</i> ) = Clinging states namely: greed and wrong-view	1	1	1
	(ii) States which are not clinging ( <i>No-upādānā dhammā</i> ) = Consciousness 89, mental factors 52 excluding 2 clinging states ( <i>i.e.</i> 52 - 2 = 50), matter 28 and Nibbāna	*5	12	18
2.	(i) States which are objects of clinging ( <i>Upādāniyā dhammā</i> ) = Mundane consciousness 81, mental factors 52 and matter 28	5	12	18
	(ii) States which are not objects of clinging ( <i>Anupādāniyā dhammā</i> ) = Supramundane consciousness 8, mental factors 36 and Nibbāna	*4	2	2
3.	(i) States which are associated with clinging ( <i>Upādāna-sampayuttā dhammā</i> ) = Greed-rooted consciousness 8, mental factors 27 excluding greed present at 4 consciousness dissociated from wrong-view, hate, envy, stinginess, worry and doubt ( <i>i.e.</i> 27 - 5 = 22)	4	2	2
	(ii) States which are dissociated from clinging ( <i>Upādāna-vippayuttā dhammā</i> ) = Hate-rooted consciousness 2, delusion-rooted consciousness 2, wholesome consciousness 21, resultant consciousness 36, inoperative consciousness 20, mental factors 52 excluding greed, wrong-view and conceit ( <i>i.e.</i> 52 - 3 = 49), greed present at 4 consciousness dissociated from wrong-view, matter 28 and Nibbāna	*5	12 <sup>4</sup>	18
4.	(i) States which are both clinging and objects of clinging ( <i>Upādānā ceva upādāniyā ca dhammā</i> ) = Clinging states namely: greed and wrong-view	1	1	1

---

<sup>1</sup>It is only mentioned but not expanded.

- |        |   |    |    |    |
|--------|---|----|----|----|
| (ii)   | States which are objects of clinging but are not clinging ( <i>Upādāniyā ceva no ca upādānā dhammā</i> ) = Mundane consciousness 81, mental factors 52 excluding 2 states of clinging ( <i>i.e.</i> $52 - 2 = 50$ ) and matter 28   | 5  | 12 | 18 |
| 5. (i) | States which are both clinging and associated with clinging ( <i>Upādānā ceva upādāna-sampayuttā ca dhammā</i> ) = 2 states of clinging present at 4 consciousness accompanied with wrong-view  | 1  | 1  | 1  |
| (ii)   | States which are associated with clinging but are not clinging ( <i>Upādāna sampayuttā ceva no ca upādānā dhammā</i> ) = Greed-rooted consciousness 8, mental factors 22 excluding two states of clinging ( <i>i.e.</i> $22 - 2 = 20$ )   | 4  | 2  | 2  |
| 6. (i) | States which are dissociated from clinging but are objects of clinging ( <i>Upādāna-vippayuttā upādāniyā dhammā</i> ) = Hate-rooted consciousness 2, delusion-rooted consciousness 2, mundane wholesome consciousness 17, mundane resultant consciousness 32, inoperative consciousness 20, mental factors 52 excluding greed, wrong-view and conceit ( <i>i.e.</i> $52 - 3 = 49$ ), greed present at 4 consciousness dissociated from wrong-view and matter 28 | 5  | 12 | 18 |
| (ii)   | States which are dissociated from clinging and are not objects of clinging ( <i>Upādāna-vippayuttāi anupādāniyā dhammā</i> ) = Supramundane consciousness 8, mental factors 36 and Nibbāna  | *4 | 2  | 2  |

		Aggregates	Bases	Elements
<b>XII. Corruption Clusters 8</b>				
<b>(Kilesa gocchakaṃ 8)</b>				
1. (i)	States which are corruptions ( <i>Kilesā dhammā</i> ) = Ten states of corruption namely: greed, hate, delusion, conceit, wrong-view, doubt, sloth, restlessness, shamelessness and fearlessness	1	1	1
(ii)	States which are not corruptions ( <i>No-kilesā dhammā</i> ) = Consciousness 89, mental factors 52 excluding 10 states of corruptions ( <i>i.e.</i> 52 - 10 = 42), matter 28 and Nibbāna	*5	12	18
2. (i)	States which are objects of corruptions ( <i>Samkilesikā dhammā</i> ) = Mundane consciousness 81, mental factors 52 and matter 28	5	12	18
(ii)	States which are not objects of corruptions ( <i>A-samkilesikā dhammā</i> ) = Supramundane consciousness 8, mental factors 36 and Nibbāna	*4	2	2
3. (i)	States which are corrupt ( <i>Samkiliṭṭhā dhammā</i> ) = Unwholesome consciousness 12, mental factors 27	4	2	2
(ii)	States which are not corrupt ( <i>A-samkiliṭṭhā dhammā</i> ) = Wholesome consciousness 21, resultant consciousness 36, inoperative consciousness 20, mental factors 38, matter 28 and Nibbāna	*5	12	18
4. (i)	States which are associated with corruptions ( <i>Kilesa-sampayuttā dhammā</i> ) = Same as 3. (i) above	4	2	2
(ii)	States which are dissociated from corruptions ( <i>Kilesa-vippayuttā dhammā</i> ) = Same as 3. (ii) above	*5	12	18
5. (i)	States which are both corruptions and objects of corruptions ( <i>Kilesā ceva samkilesikā ca dhammā</i> ) = 10 states of corruptions	1	1	1

- |        |  |    |    |    |
|--------|--|----|----|----|
| (ii)   | States which are objects of corruptions but are not corruptions ( <i>Samkilesikā ceva no ca kilesā dhammā</i> ) = Mundane consciousness 81, mental factors 52 excluding 10 states of corruptions ( <i>i.e.</i> $52 - 10 = 42$ ), matter 28                           | 5  | 12 | 18 |
| 6. (i) | States which are both corruptions and corrupt ( <i>Kilesā ceva samkiliṭṭhā ca dhammā</i> ) = Ten states of corruptions   | 1  | 1  | 1  |
| (ii)   | States which are corrupt but are not corruptions ( <i>Samkiliṭṭhā ceva no ca kilesā dhammā</i> ) = Unwholesome consciousness 12, mental factors 27 excluding 10 states of corruptions ( <i>i.e.</i> $27 - 10 = 17$ )   | 4  | 2  | 2  |
| 7. (i) | States which are both corruptions and associated with corruptions ( <i>Kilesā ceva kilesa-sampayuttā ca dhammā</i> ) = Same as 6. (i) above  | 1  | 1  | 1  |
| (ii)   | States which are associated with corruptions but are not corruptions ( <i>Kilesa-sampayuttā ceva no ca kilesā dhammā</i> ) = Same as 6. (ii) above   | 4  | 2  | 2  |
| 8. (i) | States which are dissociated from corruptions but are objects of corruptions ( <i>Kilesa-vippayuttā samkilesikā dhammā</i> ) = Mundane wholesome consciousness 17, mundane resultant consciousness 32, inoperative consciousness 20, mental factors 38 and matter 28 | 5  | 12 | 18 |
| (ii)   | States which are dissociated from corruptions and are not objects of corruptions ( <i>Kilesa-vippayuttā a-samkilesikā dhammā</i> ) = Supramundane consciousness 8, mental factors 36 and Nibbāna   | *4 | 2  | 2  |

		Aggregates	Bases	Elements		
<b>XIII. Last Couplets 18</b>						
<b>(<i>Piṭṭhi dukkaṃ</i> 18)</b>						
1.	(i)	States eradicated by First Path ( <i>Dassanena-pahātabbā dhammā</i> ) = Greed-rooted <sup>1</sup> consciousness 8, hate-rooted consciousness 2, doubt consciousness 1 and mental factors 27	4	2	2	
	(ii)	States not eradicated by First Path ( <i>Na-dassanena-pahātabbā dhammā</i> ) = 4 consciousness dissociated from wrong-view and 2 hate-rooted consciousness which do not lead to lower planes, restlessness consciousness 1, wholesome consciousness 21, resultant consciousness 36, inoperative consciousness 20, mental factors 52 excluding wrong-view, doubt ( <i>i.e.</i> 52 - 2 = 50), matter 28 and Nibbāna	*5	12	18	
2.	(i)	States eradicated by Higher Three Paths ( <i>Bhāvanāya-pahātabbā dhammā</i> ) = 4 consciousness dissociated from wrong-view, <sup>2</sup> hate-rooted consciousness 2, <sup>3</sup> restlessness consciousness 1, <sup>4</sup> mental factors 27 excluding wrong-view and doubt ( <i>i.e.</i> 27 - 2 = 25)	4	2	2	p. 51
	(ii)	States not eradicated by Higher Three Paths ( <i>Na-bhāvanāya-pahātabbā dhammā</i> ) = 4 consciousness dissociated from wrong-view and 2 hate-rooted consciousness which lead to the lower planes, 4 consciousness accompanied by wrong-view, doubt consciousness 1, wholesome consciousness 21, resultant consciousness 36, inoperative consciousness 20, mental factors 52, matter 28 and Nibbāna	*5	12	18	

---

<sup>1</sup>Refer to triplet 8. (i)

<sup>2</sup>Refer to triplet 8 (ii)

<sup>3</sup>Refer to triplet 8 (ii)

<sup>4</sup>Refer to triplet 8 (ii)

- |        |   |    |    |    |
|--------|---|----|----|----|
| 3. (i) | States together with roots eradicated by First Path ( <i>Dassanena-pahātabbā hetukā dhammā</i> ) = Greed-rooted consciousness 8, <sup>1</sup> hate-rooted consciousness 2, doubt consciousness 1, mental factors 27 excluding delusion present at doubt consciousness   | 4  | 2  | 2  |
| (ii)   | States together with roots not eradicated by First Path ( <i>Nadassanena-pahātabbā hetukā dhammā</i> ) = 4 consciousness dissociated from wrong-view and 2 hate-rooted consciousness which do not lead to the lower planes, restlessness consciousness 1, wholesome consciousness 21, resultant consciousness 36, inoperative consciousness 20, mental factors 52 excluding wrong-view and doubt ( <i>i.e.</i> 52 - 2 = 50), delusion present at doubt consciousness, matter 28 and Nibbāna | *5 | 12 | 18 |
| 4. (i) | States together with roots eradicated by Higher Three Paths ( <i>Bhāvanāya pahātabbā hetukā dhammā</i> ) = Same as triplet 9. (ii)  | 4  | 2  | 2  |
| (ii)   | States together with roots not eradicated by Higher Three Paths ( <i>Na-bhāvanāya pahātabbā hetukā dhammā</i> ) = 4 consciousness dissociated from wrong-view and 2 hate-rooted consciousness which do not lead to the lower planes, 4 consciousness accompanied with wrong-view, doubt consciousness 1, wholesome consciousness 21, resultant consciousness 36, inoperative consciousness 20, mental factors 52, delusion present at restlessness consciousness, matter 28 and Nibbāna     | *5 | 12 | 18 |
| 5. (i) | States with applied-thought ( <i>Sa-vitakkā dhammā</i> ) = consciousness present with applied-thought 55, mental factors 52 excluding applied thought ( <i>i.e.</i> 52 - 1 = 51)  | 4  | 2  | 3  |

---

<sup>1</sup>Refer to triplet 8 (i)



- |        |   |    |    |    |       |
|--------|---|----|----|----|-------|
| (ii)   | States without applied-thought ( <i>A-vitakkā dhammā</i> ) = Consciousness without applied-thought 66, mental factors 38 excluding applied-thought ( <i>i.e.</i> 38 - 1 = 37), applied-thoughts present at applied thought consciousness 55, matter 28 and Nibbāna                              | *5 | 12 | 17 |       |
| 6. (i) | States with sustained-thought ( <i>Sa-vicārā dhammā</i> ) = Consciousness present with sustained-thought 66, mental factors 52 excluding sustained-thought ( <i>i.e.</i> 52 - 1 = 51)   | 4  | 2  | 3  |       |
| (ii)   | States without sustained-thought ( <i>A-vicārā dhammā</i> ) = Consciousness without sustained thought 55, mental factors 38 excluding applied-thought and sustained-thought ( <i>i.e.</i> 38 - 2 = 36), sustained-thoughts present at sustained-thought consciousness 66, matter 28 and Nibbāna | *5 | 12 | 17 | p. 52 |
| 7. (i) | States with rapture ( <i>Sappītikā dhammā</i> ) = Consciousness present with rapture 51, mental factors 52 excluding rapture, hate, envy, stinginess, worry and doubt ( <i>i.e.</i> 52 - 6 = 46)  | 4  | 2  | 2  |       |
| (ii)   | States without rapture ( <i>A-ppītikā dhammā</i> ) = Consciousness without rapture 70, mental factors 52 excluding rapture, raptures present at rapture accompanied consciousness 51, matter 28 and Nibbāna   | *5 | 12 | 18 |       |
| 8. (i) | States which are accompanied by rapture ( <i>Pīti-sahagatā dhammā</i> ) = Same as 7. (i) above  | 4  | 2  | 2  |       |
| (ii)   | States which are not accompanied by rapture ( <i>Nā-pīti-saha-gatā dhammā</i> ) = Same as 7. (ii) above   | *5 | 12 | 18 |       |
| 9. (i) | States which are accompanied by pleasure ( <i>Sukha-sahagatā dhammā</i> ) = Consciousness accompanied by pleasure 63, mental factors 52 excluding feeling, hate, envy, stinginess, worry, and doubt ( <i>i.e.</i> 52 - 6 = 46)  | 3  | 2  | 3  |       |

- (ii) States which are not accompanied by pleasure (*Na-sukha-sahagatā dhammā*) = Consciousness accompanied by pain 3, consciousness accompanied by indifference 55, mental factors 52 excluding rapture, pleasurable feeling present at pleasure accompanied consciousness 63, matter 28 and Nibbāna \*5 12 18
10. (i) States which are accompanied by indifference (*Up-ekkhā-sahagatā dhammā*) = Consciousness accompanied by indifference 55, mental factors 52 excluding feeling, rapture, hate, envy, stinginess and worry (*i.e.* 52 - 6 = 46) 3 2 7
- (ii) States which are not accompanied by indifference (*Na-upekkhā-sahagatā dhammā*) = Consciousness accompanied by pleasure 63, consciousness accompanied by pain 3, mental factors 52 excluding doubt, 55 indifferent feeling present at 55 consciousness accompanied by indifference, matter 28 and Nibbāna \*5 12 13
11. (i) States which belong to the sensuous plane (*Kāmāvacarā dhammā*) = Sensuous consciousness 54, mental factors 52 and matter 28 5 12 18
- (ii) States which do not belong to the sensuous plane (*Na-kāmāvacarā dhammā*) = Lofty consciousness 27, Supramundane consciousness 8, mental factors 38 and Nibbāna \*4 2 2
12. (i) States which belong to the fine-material plane (*Rūpāvacarā dhammā*) = Fine-material consciousness 15, mental factors 35 4 2 2
- (ii) States which do not belong to the fine-material plane (*Na-rūpāvacarā dhammā*) = Sensuous consciousness 54, immaterial consciousness 12, Supramundane consciousness 8, mental factors 52, matter 28 and Nibbāna \*5 12 18

13. (i)	States which belong to the immaterial plane ( <i>A-rūpāvacarā dhammā</i> ) = Immaterial consciousness 12, mental factors 30	4	2	2	p. 53
(ii)	States which do not belong to the immaterial plane ( <i>Na-arūpāvacarā dhammā</i> ) = Sensuous consciousness 54, fine-material consciousness 15, Supramundane consciousness 8, mental factors 52, matter 28 and Nibbāna	*5	12	18	
14. (i)	States which are included in the round of existences ( <i>Pariyāpannā dhammā</i> ) = Mundane consciousness 81, mental factors 52 and matter 28	5	12	18	
(ii)	States which are not included in the round of existences ( <i>A-pariyāpannā dhammā</i> ) = Supramundane consciousness 8, mental factors 36 and Nibbāna	*4	2	2	
15. (i)	States which lead out from the round of existences ( <i>Niyyānikā dhammā</i> ) = 4 Path consciousness, mental factors 36	4	2	2	
(ii)	States which do not lead out from the round of existences ( <i>A-niyyānikā dhammā</i> ) = Mundane consciousness 81, Fruition consciousness 4, mental factors 52, matter 28 and Nibbāna	*5	12	18	
16. (i)	States which have fixed destiny yielded after decease or after their own occurrence ( <i>Niyatā dhammā</i> ) = 7th impulsion of wrong-view associated consciousness 4, 7th impulsion of hate-rooted consciousness 2, mental factors 27 excluding conceit, doubt ( <i>i.e.</i> 27 - 2 = 25), 4 Path consciousness, mental-factors 36	4	2	2	
(ii)	States which have not fixed destiny as above ( <i>A-niyatā dhammā</i> ) = Unwholesome consciousness 12 excluding 7th impulsion from wrong-view associated consciousness 4 and hate-rooted consciousness 2, mundane wholesome 17, resultant consciousness 36, inoperative consciousness 20, mental factors 52, matter 28 and Nibbāna	*5	12	18	

- |         |   |    |    |    |
|---------|---|----|----|----|
| 17. (i) | States which are with beyond ( <i>Sa-uttarā dhammā</i> ) = Mundane consciousness 81, mental factors 52 and matter 28  | 5  | 12 | 18 |
| (ii)    | States which are not with beyond ( <i>Anuttarā dhammā</i> ) = Supramundane consciousness 8, mental factors 36 and Nibbāna   | *4 | 2  | 2  |
| 18. (i) | States which are causes of lamentation ( <i>Sa-raṇā dhammā</i> ) = Unwholesome consciousness 12, mental factors 27  | 4  | 2  | 2  |
| (ii)    | States which are not causes of lamentation ( <i>A-raṇā dhammā</i> ) = Wholesome consciousness 21, resultant consciousness 36, inoperative consciousness 20, mental factors 38, matter 28, and Nibbāna | *5 | 12 | 18 |

# II

## Classified and Unclassified<sup>1</sup>

### 8 Questions and Answers

171. Eye base is classified with these states ... Tangible Object base is classified with these states; Eye element is classified with these states ... Tangible Object element is classified with these states under the same aggregate, but not classified under the same base and under the same element. p. 54

Under how many aggregates, under how many bases and under how many elements are those states not classified? They are not classified under 4 aggregates, under 2 bases and under 8 elements (20).

172. Eye consciousness element is classified with these states; Ear consciousness element; Nose consciousness element; Tongue consciousness element; Body consciousness element; Mind element; Mind consciousness element is classified with these states under the same aggregate and under the same base, but not classified under the same element. ... They are not classified under 4 aggregates, under 11 bases and under 12 elements (7).

173. Eye faculty is classified with these states; Ear faculty; Nose faculty; Tongue faculty; Body faculty; Female faculty; Male faculty is classified with these states under the same aggregate, but not classi-

---

<sup>1</sup>Refer to the Charts for details of the Chapters.

fied under the same base and under the same element. ... They are not classified under 4 aggregates, under 2 bases and under 8 elements (7).

174. Non-percepted becoming is classified with these states; One-aggregate becoming is classified with these states under the same aggregate, but not classified under the same base and under the same element. ... They are not classified under 4 aggregates, under 3 bases and under 9 elements (2).

175. Lamentation is classified with these states; States both visible and impinging are classified with these states under the same aggregate, but not classified under the same base and under the same element. ... They are not classified under 4 aggregates, under 2 bases and under 8 elements (2).

p. 55 176. States invisible but impinging are classified with these states under the same aggregate, but not classified under the same base and under the same element. ... They are not classified under 4 aggregates, under 10 bases and under 16 elements (1).

177. States with visibility are classified with these states under the same aggregate, but not classified under the same base and under the same element. ... They are not classified under 4 aggregates, under 2 bases and under 8 elements (1).

178. States with impinging are classified with these states; States which are derived are classified with these states under the same aggregate, but not classified under the same base and under the same element.

Under how many aggregates, under how many bases and under how many elements are those states not classified? They are not classified under 4 aggregates, under 11 bases and under 17 elements (2).

## Mnemonic

Ten bases, seventeen elements,  
 Seven faculties, non-percepted becoming, one-aggregate becoming,  
 Lamentation, both visible and impinging,  
 Invisible but impinging, visibility, with impinging, derived states.

## Explanation of the Method and Chart of Chapter II

*Subject Matter:* 42 states form the subject matter of this chapter. 35 of these, each of which is only a part of matter aggregate, can be classified with the other parts of matter aggregate (known as “these states” in the text) under the same aggregate (matter aggregate) but not under the same base and under the same element. The remaining 7, each of which is a part of consciousness aggregate, can be classified with the other parts of consciousness aggregate (known as “these states” in the text) under the same aggregate (consciousness aggregate) and under the same base (mind base) but not under the same element. All the remaining states of enquiry of the text are excluded because they comprise the whole of materiality and mentality and cannot, therefore, be classified in this manner. Out of the 42 states 37 belong to the internal and 5 to the external tables which give all the states of enquiry of the text.

*Questions and Answers:* The 42 states are dealt with in 8 sets of questions and answers as shown below, the states being grouped | p. 56 together in one set wherever the answers are the same with regard to the numbers of aggregates, bases and elements:

1. One group of 10 bases and 10 elements, *i.e.* the 12 gross physical states (171<sup>1</sup>).
2. One group of 7 consciousness elements (172).
3. One group of 7 faculties (173).
4. One group of 2 becomings (174).
5. One group of 2, namely: lamentation; states both visible and impinging (175).
6. States invisible but impinging (176).
7. States with visibility (177).
8. States with impinging and spates which are derived (178).

“*These states*”: The states that are denoted as “these states” in the text can be found from the Chart. The rules for determining “these states” for each set of question and answer are given below:

---

<sup>1</sup>This refers to the number of the question in the text.

1. When one of the 12 gross physical states is the state of enquiry, the remaining 27 physical states of matter aggregate are taken as “these states”. For instance, when the eye base<sup>1</sup> is dealt with, the remaining 27 physical states are taken as “these states”. Only then can the eye base be classified with the remaining 27 physical states under the same aggregate as all these physical states come under matter aggregate. But they cannot be classified under the same base and under the same element as the eye base comes under eye base and under eye element whereas the remaining 27 physical states come under other bases and under other elements. In the cases of tangible object base and tangible object element, each of which consists of the 3 primary physical states, earth, heat and wind, the remaining 25 physical states of matter aggregate are taken as “these states”.
2. When one of the 7 consciousness elements, such as the eye consciousness element,<sup>2</sup> is the state of enquiry, the remaining 6 consciousness elements are taken as “these states”. Only then can eye consciousness element be classified with the remaining 6 consciousness elements under the same aggregate and under the same base as all these consciousness elements come under consciousness aggregate and under mind base. But they cannot be classified under the same element as eye consciousness element comes under eye consciousness element whereas the remaining 6 consciousness elements come under other elements.
3. With eye faculty, nose faculty, etc., which are the same as eye base, nose base, etc., the remaining 27 physical states of matter aggregate are taken as “these states”. But in the cases of female faculty and male faculty, which are subtle physical states, the 12 gross physical states are taken as “these states”. Only then can each of these faculties be classified with the 12 gross physical states under the same aggregate as all these physical states come under matter aggregate. But they cannot be classified un-

p. 57

---

<sup>1</sup>For proper understanding refer to the analytical details and classifications of the particular state of enquiry given in the Internal and External Tables and the Chart of [Chapter I](#). It is the same with all the other chapters.

<sup>2</sup>See previous note.



der the same base and under the same element as the female and male faculties come under cognizable base and under cognizable element whereas the 12 gross physical states come under gross bases and gross elements.

4. With non-percepted becoming and one-aggregate becoming which are the same and include visible object base and cognizable base, the 11 gross physical states (visible object is excluded from the 12 gross physical states) are taken as “these states”. Only then can each of these becomings be classified with the 11 gross physical states under the same aggregate as all these physical states come under matter aggregate. But they cannot be classified under the same base and under the same element as the becomings come under visible object base and cognizable base and under visible object element and cognizable element whereas the 11 gross physical states come under other bases and under other elements.
5. Lamentation, which is audible object born of perverted mind, is the same as sound base. So the remaining 27 physical states of matter aggregate are taken as “these states”. States both visible and impinging is simply visible object which is the same as visible object base. So the remaining 27 physical states of matter aggregate are taken as “these states”.
6. States invisible but impinging consist of 11 gross physical states (visible object is excluded from the 12 gross physical states). So visible object and the 16 subtle physical states are taken as “these states”. As all these physical states come under matter aggregate they can be classified under the same aggregate. But they cannot be classified under the same base and under the same element as | the states invisible but impinging come under 9 gross bases and under 9 gross elements whereas visible object and the 16 subtle physical states come under visible object base and cognizable base and under visible object element and cognizable element.
7. States with visibility is visible object which is the same as visible object base. So the remaining 27 physical states are taken as “these states”.

8. States with impinging are the 12 gross physical states. So the 16 subtle physical states are taken as “these states”. As all these physical states come under matter aggregate, they can be classified under the same aggregate. But they cannot be classified under the same base and under the same element as the states with impinging come under gross bases and under gross elements whereas the 16 subtle physical states come under cognizable base and under cognizable element.

States which are derived are the 24 physical states of matter aggregate. So the 3 primary physical states (water<sup>1</sup> is excluded) are taken as “these states”. As all these physical states come under matter aggregate, they can be classified under the same aggregate. But they cannot be classified under the same base and under the same element as the states which are derived come under other gross bases and under other gross elements whereas the 3 primary physical states come under tangible object base and under tangible object element.

“*Those states*”: “Those states” are the same as the states that were taken as “these states”.

*Unclassified*: The aggregates, bases and elements under which each of the states taken as “these states” are classified can be found from the classifications of the states of enquiry given in the Tables. The remainder are those aggregates, bases and elements under which “those states” (which are the same as “these states”) are not classified. For example, the 27 physical states taken as “these states” in the first set of question and answer are classified under 1 aggregate (matter aggregate), under 10 bases (9 gross bases<sup>2</sup> and cognizable base) and under 10 elements (9 gross elements<sup>3</sup> and cognizable element). Hence “those states”, the same 27 physical states, are not classified under the remaining 4 aggregates (feeling, perception, mental formation and consciousness aggregates), under the remaining 2 bases (eye base and mind base) and under the remaining 8 elements (eye element

---

<sup>1</sup>Water, which is one of the 4 primary states, is excluded because, unlike the other 3, it does not come under tangible object base and under tangible object element.

<sup>2</sup>Eye base and eye element are excluded from the 10 gross bases and 10 gross elements as eye base is not included in the 27 physical states.

<sup>3</sup>See previous note.

and 7 consciousness elements). This has to be similarly applied to all “those states” in the other questions and answers.

*How to read the Chart*<sup>1</sup>: Take the eye base as an illustration. Eye base is classified with these states (the remaining 27 physical states of matter aggregate) under the same aggregate (matter aggregate), but not classified under the same base (eye base) and under the same element (eye element).

Under how many aggregates, under how many bases and under how many elements are those states (the remaining 27 physical states of matter aggregate) not classified? They are not classified under 4 aggregates (feeling, perception, mental formation and consciousness aggregates), under 2 bases (eye base and mind base) and under 8 elements (eye element and 7 consciousness elements).

Next comes the nose base<sup>2</sup> which is omitted in the text. Nose base is classified with these states (the remaining 27 physical states of matter aggregate) under the same aggregate (matter aggregate) but not classified under the same base (nose base) and under the same element (nose element).

Under how many aggregates, under how many bases and under how many elements are those states (the remaining 27 physical states of matter aggregate) not classified? They are not classified under 4 aggregates (feeling, perception, mental formation and consciousness aggregates), under 2 bases (nose base and mind base) and under 8 elements (nose element and 7 consciousness elements).

The other gross bases and gross elements are to be dealt with separately in a similar manner. In the case of tangible object, which consists of earth, heat and wind, the remaining 25 physical states of matter aggregate are taken as “these states”.

---

<sup>1</sup>See Method of Chapter II: *Classified and Unclassified* on page 215.

<sup>2</sup>Such states of enquiry which are omitted and those that are mentioned in each set of question and answer of all the chapters must be dealt with separately as shown above. This is not done in the text as it would become voluminous and, besides, much time and vocal effort would be spent in recital. For the same reason only the first and last set of questions and answers are complete and serve as the model for each chapter. The others are abbreviated but retain the essential form of the method together with the answers, the questions being omitted.

p. 60 *The kinds of “those states” (or “these states”):* On examination of the columns of “those states” it is found that there are 8 kinds of “those states”. The numbers of the states of enquiry which give the same kind are shown in brackets along with the questions, the latter being grouped together for the same kind.

“Those states”	Question Numbers	States
(1) Remaining 27 physical states	171 (18), 173 (5), 175 (2), 177 (1)	26
(2) Remaining 25 physical states	171 (2)	2
(3) Remaining 6 consciousness elements	172 (7)	7
(4) 12 gross physical states	173 (2)	2
(5) 11 gross physical states	174 (2)	2
(6) Visible object + 16 subtle physical states	176 (1)	1
(7) 16 subtle physical states	178 (1)	1
(8) Earth, heat, wind	178 (1)	1
	Total:	42

In the case of the first 3 kinds, the figures are the same but not the states. For example if eye base is dealt with, 28 physical states excluding eye base, *i.e.* 27, are taken as “those states”. With nose base, 28 excluding nose base, *i.e.* 27, are taken.

*The kinds of Answers*<sup>1</sup>: The table below the Chart shows that there are 5 kinds of answers. The same answer is given with “those states” which are in the same column as the table. The numbers of the states of enquiry which give the same kind are shown in brackets along with the questions, the latter being grouped together for each kind.

Answers	A., B., E.	Question Numbers	States
(1)	4, 2, 8	171 (20), 173 (7), 175(2), 177 (1)	30
(2)	4, 11, 12	172 (7)	7

<sup>1</sup>Detailed explanations will not be given for the other charts to find the kinds of “those states” and “answers”.

(3)	4, 3, 9	174 (2)	2
(4)	4, 10, 16	176 (1)	1
(5)	4, 11, 17	178 (2)	2
Total:			42

Though the numbers of aggregates, bases and elements are the same in each answer, the kinds are not always the same as is shown below the table.<sup>1</sup> This information is not provided in the text.

---

<sup>1</sup>The kinds of aggregates, bases and elements will not be given in the other charts but they can easily be found out.



# III

## Unclassified and Classified

### 12 Questions and Answers

179. Feeling aggregate is not classified with these states; Perception aggregate; Mental formation aggregate; Origin truth; Path truth is not classified with these states under the same aggregate, but classified under the same base and under the same element. p. 61

Under how many aggregates, under how many bases and under how many elements are those states classified? They, excluding Nibbāna from the classification of aggregates, are classified under 3 aggregates, under 1 base and under 1 element (5).

180. ...Cessation truth is not classified with these states under the same aggregate, but classified under the same base and under the same element. ...They are classified under 4 aggregates, under 1 base and under 1 element (1).

181. ...Life faculty is not classified with these states under the same aggregate, but classified under the same base and under the same element. ...They, excluding Nibbāna from the classification of aggregates, are classified under 2 aggregates, under 1 base and under 1 element (1).

182. Female faculty is not classified with these states; Male faculty; Bodily pleasure faculty; Bodily pain faculty; Mental joy faculty; Grief faculty; Indifference faculty; Faith faculty; Energy faculty; Mindfulness faculty; Concentration faculty; Wisdom faculty; I-shall-know-what-I-did-not-know faculty; Higher realization faculty; He-

who-has-known faculty; Ignorance; Conditioned by ignorance, Formations; Conditioned by 6 bases, Contact; Conditioned by contact, Feeling; Conditioned by feeling, Craving; Conditioned by craving, Clinging; Kamma becoming is not classified with these states under the same aggregate, but classified under the same base and under the same element. ... They, excluding Nibbāna from the classification of aggregates, are classified under 3 aggregates, under 1 base and under 1 element (22).

183. Birth; Ageing; Death; Jhāna is not classified with these states under the same aggregate, but classified under the same base and under the same element. ... They, excluding Nibbāna from the classification of aggregates, are classified under 2 aggregates, under 1 base and under 1 element (4).

p. 62 184. Sorrow; Suffering; Grief; Despair; Application of mindfulness; Great effort; Illimitables; 5 Faculties; 5 Strengths; 7 Factors of Enlightenment; Noble Eightfold Path; Contact; Feeling; Perception; Volition; Decision; Attention; States which are roots; States which are roots and also have associated roots; States which are roots and also associated with roots are not classified with these states under the same aggregate, but classified under the same base and under the same element. ... They, excluding Nibbāna from the classification of aggregates, are classified under 3 aggregates, under 1 base and under 1 element (20).

185. States not arising from 4 causes; States not conditioned by 4 causes are not classified with these states under the same aggregate, but classified under the same base and under the same element. ... They are classified under 4 aggregates, under 1 base and under 1 element (2).

186. States which are cankers; States which are both cankers and objects of cankers; States which are both cankers and associated with cankers are not classified with these states under the same aggregate, but classified under the same base and under the same element. ... They, excluding Nibbāna from the classification of aggregates, are classified under 3 aggregates, under 1 base and under 1 element (3).



187. Fetters ...Ties ...Floods ...Bonds ...Hindrances<sup>1</sup> ...States which are misapprehensions; States which are both misapprehensions and objects of misapprehensions are not classified with these states under the same aggregate, but classified under the same base and under the same element. ...They, excluding Nibbāna from the classification of aggregates, are classified under 3 aggregates, under 1 base and under 1 element (17).

188. States which are mental factors; States which are associated with consciousness; States which are conjoined with consciousness; States which are conjoined with and are generated by consciousness; States which are conjoined with, are generated by and arise together with consciousness; States which are conjoined with, are generated by and arise successively with consciousness are not classified with these states under the same aggregate, but classified under the same base and under the same element. ...They, excluding | Nibbāna from the classification of aggregates, are classified under 1 aggregate, under 1 base and under 1 element (6). p. 63

189. States which arise together with consciousness; States which arise successively with consciousness are not classified with these states under the same aggregate, but classified under the same base and under the same element. ...They are not classified under any aggregates; they are classified under 1 base and under 1 element (2).

190. States which are clinging. ...States which are corruptions; States which are both corruptions and objects of corruptions; States which are both corruptions and corrupt; States which are both corruptions and associated with corruptions are not classified with these states under the same aggregate, but classified under the same base and under the same element.

Under how many aggregates, under how many bases and under how many elements are those states classified? They, excluding Nibbāna from the classification of aggregates, are classified under 3 aggregates, under 1 base and under 1 element (7).

---

<sup>1</sup>Only 3 from each of the 5 clusters are to be taken as in the case of the canker cluster given above, No. 186.

## Mnemonic

Three aggregates, likewise truths, sixteen faculties,  
 Fourteen dependent originations, next fourteen,  
 Thirty kinds belonging to ten clusters,  
 Two kinds from lesser couplets, eight kinds from intermediate couplets.

## Explanation of the Method and Chart of Chapter III

*Subject Matter:* 90 states that come under cognizable base, *i.e.* subtle matter, feeling, perception, mental formation and Nibbāna, form the subject matter of this chapter. These are the states which can be classified under the same base and under the same element but not under the same aggregate.<sup>1</sup> All the remaining states of the Text are excluded because they include gross matter and consciousness. The former comes under different bases and different elements while the latter comes under different elements. Out of these 90 states, 50 belong to the internal and 40 to the external states of enquiry.

*Questions and Answers:* There are 12 sets of questions and answers, Nos. 179-190.

p. 64 “*These States*”: The rules for determining “these states” are as follows:

1. When the subject of enquiry belongs to one of the 5 states, namely; subtle matter, feeling, perception, mental formation and Nibbāna, that come under cognizable base, the remaining 4 states are taken as “these states”. Since these 5 states come under different aggregates they cannot be classified under the same aggregates. But they come under cognizable base and under cognizable element and, therefore, they can be classified under the same base and under the same element. For example, when feeling aggregate is dealt with, the remaining 4 states, subtle matter, perception, mental formation and Nibbāna

---

<sup>1</sup>Refer to the Chart of [Chapter I](#).

are taken as “these states”. The feeling aggregate comes under feeling aggregate and the remaining 4 states come under different aggregates and so they cannot be classified under the same aggregate. But feeling aggregate comes under cognizable base and under cognizable element and so do the remaining 4 states. Thus they can be classified under the same base and under the same element.

The case where, like the feeling aggregate in No. 179, the remaining 4 states are taken as “these states” applies also to Nos. 180, 182, 184, 186, 187 and 190. 77 states of enquiry are dealt with in this case. In Nos. 180 and 185, where Nibbāna is the state of enquiry, it must be remembered that Nibbāna is excluded from the classification of aggregates.

2. When the subject of enquiry belongs to 2 out of the 5 states under cognizable base, the remaining 3 states are taken as “these states”. This is the case with Nos. 181 and 183 where 5 states of enquiry are dealt with.

Life faculty in No. 181 consists of both physical and psychological life, the former comes under subtle matter and the latter under mental formation. So the remaining 3 states, feeling, perception and Nibbāna are taken as “these states”.

Birth, Ageing and Death in No. 183 refer to both materiality and mentality where the former comes under subtle matter and the latter under mental formation and so “these states” are the same as in life-faculty above.

Jhāna in No. 183 consists of applied-thought, sustained-thought, rapture, bliss and one-pointedness of mind. Bliss is feeling and the rest are mental formations. So the remaining 3 states, subtle matter, perception and Nibbāna are taken as “these states”.

3. When the subject of enquiry belongs to 3 of the 5 states under cognizable base, the remaining 2 states are taken as “these states”. This is the case with No. 188 where 6 states of enquiry are dealt with. They are all mental factors, *i.e.* feeling, percep-

tion and mental formation. So the remaining 2 states, subtle matter and Nibbāna, are taken as “these states”.

4. When the subject of enquiry belongs to 4 of the 5 states under cognizable base, the remaining state is taken as “these states”. This is the case with No. 189 where 2 states of enquiry are dealt with. Each consists of 52 mental factors and 2 intimations, the former coming under feeling, perception and mental formation and the latter under subtle matter. So the only remaining state, Nibbāna, is taken as “these states”.

“*Those States*”: “Those states” are the same as the states that were taken for “these states”. This is shown by the sign of equality in the column.

*Classified*: The aggregates included in “those states” can be read off from those given in the corresponding “these states” for the purpose of classification under the aggregates, bases and elements. Whenever Nibbāna is included in “those states” it is excluded from the classification under the aggregate. As regards classification under bases and elements, it is always the same, namely: cognizable base and cognizable element. In the case of No. 189, the zero in the classified aggregates table indicates that Nibbāna is excluded from the classification. This is similarly shown in the unclassified aggregates column with Nos. 180 and 185, the states of enquiry being Nibbāna.

*How to read the Chart*<sup>1</sup>: Take the feeling aggregate as an illustration. Feeling aggregate is not classified with these states (subtle matter, perception, mental formation and Nibbāna) under the same aggregate (feeling aggregate) but classified under the same base (cognizable base) and under the same element (cognizable element).

Under how many aggregates, under how many bases and under how many elements are those states (subtle matter, perception, mental formation and Nibbāna) classified? They, excluding Nibbāna from the classification of aggregates, are classified under 3 aggregates (matter, perception and mental formation aggregates), under 1 base (cognizable base) and under 1 element (cognizable element).

*The kinds of “those states” (or “these states”)*: On examination of

---

<sup>1</sup>See Method of Chapter III: *Unclassified and Classified* on page 216.

the columns of “those states” it is found that there are | 9 kinds of “those states”. The numbers of the states of enquiry which give the same kind are shown in brackets along with the questions. This can be found from the column of “these states”. p. 66

	Question Numbers	States
1.	179 (1), 182 (6), 184 (4)	11
2.	179 (1), 184 (1)	2
3.	179 (3), 182 (14), 184 (15), 186 (3), 187 (17), 190 (7)	59
4.	180 (1), 185 (2)	3
5.	181 (1), 183 (3)	4
6.	182 (2)	2
7.	183 (1)	1
8.	188 (6)	6
9.	189 (2)	2
Total:		90

*The kinds of Answers:* The classified table below the Chart shows that there are 5 kinds of answers. The same answer is given by a number of “those states”. The numbers of the states of enquiry which give the same kind can be read off from the Chart.

Answers	Question Numbers	States
(1) 3, 1, 1	179 (5), 182 (22), 184 (20), 186 (3), 187 (17), 190 (7)	74
(2) 4, 1, 1	180 (1), 185 (2)	3
(3) 2, 1, 1	181 (1), 183 (4)	5
(4) 1, 1, 1	188 (6)	6
(5) 0, 1, 1	189 (2)	2
Total:		90

The kinds of aggregates, bases and elements corresponding to the numbers can be found out from the corresponding column of “these states”. They are the same as “those states”.



# IV

## Classified and Classified

### 2 Questions and Answers

191. Origin truth is classified with these states; Path truth is classified with these states under the same aggregate, under the same base and under the same element. Those states are classified with these states under the same aggregate, under the same base and under the same element. p. 67

Under how many aggregates, under how many bases and under how many elements are those states classified? They are classified under 1 aggregate, under 1 base and under 1 element (2).

192. Female faculty is classified with these states; Male faculty; Bodily pleasure faculty; Bodily pain faculty; Mental joy faculty; Grief faculty; Indifference faculty; Faith faculty; Energy faculty; Mindfulness faculty; Concentration faculty; Wisdom faculty; I-shall-know-what-I-did-not-know faculty; Higher realization faculty; He-who-has-known faculty (15).

Ignorance; Conditioned by ignorance, Formations; Conditioned by 6 bases, Contact; Conditioned by feeling, Craving; Conditioned by craving, Clinging; Kamma becoming; Sorrow; Lamentation; Suffering; Grief; Despair (11).

Application of mindfulness; Great effort; Illimitables; 5 Faculties; 5 Strengths; 7 Factors of Enlightenment; Noble Eightfold Path; Contact; Volition; Decision; Attention (11).

States which are roots; States which are roots and also have

associated roots; States which are roots and also associated with roots; States which are Cankers ... Fetters ... Ties ... Floods ... Bonds ... Hindrances ... Misapprehensions ... Clingsings<sup>1</sup> ... States which are corruptions; States which are both corruptions and objects of corruptions; States which are both corruptions and corrupt; States which are both corruptions and associated with corruptions are classified with these states under the same aggregate, under the same base and under the same element. Those states are classified with these states under the same aggregate, under the same base and under the same element.

p. 68 Under how many aggregates, under how many bases and under how many elements are those states classified? They are classified under 1 aggregate, under 1 base and under 1 element (30).

## Mnemonic

Two truths, fifteen faculties, eleven dependent originations,  
Next eleven, thirty kinds belonging to clusters.

## Explanation of the Method and Chart of Chapter IV

*Subject Matter:* 69 states that are the parts of mental formation aggregate, 5 feeling faculties, subtle matter and 3 kinds of audible object form the subject matter of this chapter. Each of them can be classified with other states in the same category (the first of “these states” in the Chart) under the same aggregate, under the same base and under the same element. And because they belong to the same aggregate, the same base and the same element, the states under comparison can be interchanged and classified in the same way as above. Out of the 69 states, 39 belong to the internal and 30 to the external states of enquiry.

---

<sup>1</sup>These 6 clusters are to be taken three each in the same way as canker clusters in No. 186. For misapprehension cluster only 2 are to be taken as in No. 187.



“*These States*”: The rules for determining “these states” are as follows:

1. When one of the 50 states of the mental formation aggregate is the state of enquiry, the remaining 49 states, which also come under the same aggregate, under the same base and under the same element, are taken as the first “these states”. On interchanging, the state of enquiry is taken as the second “these states”. For example, when Origin truth is dealt with, the remaining 49 states of the mental formation aggregate are taken as the first “these states”. Both Origin truth and the 49 states which come under mental formation aggregate, under cognizable base and under cognizable element can be classified under the same aggregate, under the same base and under the same element. On interchanging, the 49 states are classified with Origin truth, the state of enquiry, which is taken as the second “these states” under the same aggregate, under the same base and under the same element as in the first case. This is shown in the second “these states” column of the Chart.

In the case of Path truth, only the Supramundane Eightfold Path is associated with 4 Path consciousness. Since the mundane Eightfold Path associated with wholesome consciousness and others is | not included, the 50 states of mental formation aggregate are taken as “these states”.

p. 69

- In the cases of the states which are roots, etc., the 6 roots are excluded and 44 states of mental formation aggregate are taken as “these states”.
2. When one of 16 states of subtle matter such as female faculty is the state of enquiry, the remaining 15, which also come under matter aggregate, under cognizable base and under cognizable element are taken as the first “these states”. Then on interchanging, the state of enquiry is taken as the second “these states”. This also applies to male-faculty.
  3. When one of the 5 feeling faculties such as bodily pleasure faculty is the state of enquiry, the remaining 4 faculties, which also come under feeling aggregate, under cognizable base and under

cognizable element, are taken as the first “these states”. Then on interchanging, the state of enquiry is taken as the second “these states”.

4. When one of the 3 kinds of audible object such as lamentation is the state of enquiry, the remaining 2, which also come under matter aggregate, sound base and sound element are taken as the first “these states”. Then on interchanging, the state of enquiry is taken as the second “these states”.

“*Those States*”: The first and second “those states” are the same as the states taken as the first and second “these states” respectively. This can be seen from the Chart.

*How to read the Chart*<sup>1</sup>: Take Origin truth as an illustration. Origin truth is classified with these states (the remaining 49 states of mental formation aggregate) under the same aggregate (mental formation aggregate), under the same base (cognizable base) and under the same element (cognizable element). Those states (the remaining 49 states of mental formation aggregate) are classified with these states (Origin truth) under the same aggregate (mental formation aggregate), under the same base (cognizable base) and under the same element (cognizable element).

Under how many aggregates, under how many bases and under how many elements are those states (Origin truth) classified? They are classified under 1 aggregate (mental formation aggregate), under 1 base (cognizable base) and under 1 element (cognizable element).

p. 70 *The kinds of the first “these” and “those” States*: The same kinds are grouped together and mentioned in brackets with the numbers of the questions:

---

<sup>1</sup>See Method of Chapter IV: *Classified and Classified* on page 217.

Question Numbers	States
191 (Origin truth 1), 192 (Faith, Energy, Mindfulness, Ignorance, Contact, Craving, Clinging, Despair, Contact, Volition, Decision, Attention + 30 clusters)	43
191 (Path truth), 192 (Concentration, <sup>1</sup> Wisdom, I-shall-know-what-I-did-not-know faculty, Higher realization faculty, He-who-has-known faculty, Formation, Kamma becoming, Application of mindfulness to Noble Eightfold Path)	15
192 Female faculty, Male faculty	2
192 Bodily pleasure faculty ... Indifference faculty (5), Sorrow, Suffering, Grief	8
192 Lamentation	1
Total	69

*The kinds of Answers:* The answers are the same with respect to their numbers, but the kinds of aggregates, bases and elements they stand for are to be found in the Classified columns.

---

<sup>1</sup>2 x 5 consciousness are excluded from concentration faculty. See the [classification](#) given with the Chart of [Chapter I](#). But one-pointedness mental factor itself is associated with 2 x 5 consciousness. Therefore this mental factor must be included with the 49 states of mental formation aggregate, making 50 in all. This applies similarly to the others in this group.



# V

## Unclassified and Unclassified

### 35 Questions and Answers

193. Matter aggregate is not classified with these states under the same aggregate, under the same base and under the same element. p. 71

Those states are not classified with these states under the same aggregate, under the same base and under the same element.

Under how many aggregates, under how many bases and under how many elements are those states not classified? They are not classified under 1 aggregate, under 1 base and under 7 elements (1).

194. Feeling aggregate is not classified with these states; Perception aggregate; Mental formation aggregate is not classified with these states under the same aggregate, under the same base and under the same element.

Those states are not classified with these states. ... They are not classified under 2 aggregates, under 11 bases and under 17 elements (3).

195. Consciousness aggregate; Mind base; Eye consciousness element.<sup>1</sup> ... Mind element; Mind consciousness element; Mind faculty is not classified with these states under the same aggregate, under the same base and under the same element.

---

<sup>1</sup>Ear consciousness element to body consciousness element should be taken.

Those states are not classified with these states. ... They are not classified under 4 aggregates, under 11 bases and under 11 elements (10).

196. Eye base is not classified with these states. ... Tangible Object base; Eye element; ... Tangible Object element is not classified with these states under the same aggregate, under the same base and under the same element.

Those states are not classified with these states. ... They are not classified under 4 aggregates, under 2 bases and under 8 elements (20).

197. Cognizable base; Cognizable element; Female faculty; Male faculty; Life faculty is not classified with these states under the same aggregate, under the same base and under the same element.

p. 72 Those states are not classified with these states. ... They are not classified under 1 aggregate, under 1 base and under 7 elements (5).

198. Origin truth; Path truth; Cessation truth is not classified with these states under the same aggregate, under the same base and under the same element.

Those states are not classified with these states. ... They are not classified under 2 aggregates, under 11 bases and under 17 elements (3).

199. Eye faculty ... Body faculty is not classified with these states under the same aggregate, under the same base and under the same element.

Those states are not classified with these states. ... They are not classified under 4 aggregates, under 2 bases and under 8 elements (5).

200. Bodily pleasure faculty; Bodily pain faculty; Mental joy faculty; Grief faculty; Indifference faculty; Faith faculty; Energy faculty; Mindfulness faculty; Concentration faculty; Wisdom faculty; I-shall-know-what-I-did-not-know faculty; Higher realization faculty; He-who-has-known faculty; Ignorance; Conditioned by ignorance, Formation is not classified with these states under the same aggregate, under the same base and under the same element.

Those states are not classified with these states. ... They are not classified under 2 aggregates, under 11 bases and under 17 elements (15).

201. Conditioned by formations, Consciousness is not classified

with these states under the same aggregate, under the same base and under the same element.

Those states are not classified with these states. ... They are not classified under 4 aggregates, under 11 bases and under 11 elements (1).

202. Conditioned by consciousness, Mentality-Materiality is not classified with these states under the same aggregate, under the same base and under the same element.

Those states are not classified with these states. ... They are not classified under 1 aggregate, under 1 base and under 7 elements (1).

203. Conditioned by mentality-materiality, 6 Bases are not classified with these states under the same aggregate, under the same base and under the same element.

Those states are not classified with these states. ... They are not classified under 3 aggregates, under 1 base and under 1 element (1).

204. Conditioned by 6 bases, Contact; Conditioned by contact, Feeling; Conditioned by feeling, Craving; Conditioned by craving, Clinging; Kamma becoming is not classified with these states under the same aggregate, under the same base and under the same element. p. 73

Those states are not classified with these states. ... They are not classified under 2 aggregates, under 11 bases and under 17 elements (5).

205. Immaterial becoming; Neither perception nor non-perception becoming; Four-aggregate becoming; Road to psychic power is not classified with these states under the same aggregate, under the same base and under the same element.

Those states are not classified with these states. ... They are not classified under 1 aggregate, under 10 bases and under 10 elements (4).

206. Non-percepted becoming; One-aggregate becoming; Birth; Ageing; Death is not classified with these states under the same aggregate, under the same base and under the same element.

Those states are not classified with these states. ... They are not classified under 1 aggregate, under 1 base and under 7 elements (5).

207. Lamentation is not classified with these states under the same aggregate, under the same base and under the same element.

Those states are not classified with these states. ... They are not classified under 4 aggregates, under 2 bases and under 8 elements (1).

208. Sorrow; Suffering; Grief; Despair; Application of mindfulness; Great effort; Jhāna; Illimitables; 5 Faculties; 5 Strengths; 7 Factors of Enlightenment; Noble Eightfold Path; Contact; Feeling; Perception; Volition; Decision; Attention is not classified with these states under the same aggregate, under the same base and under the same element.

Those states are not classified with these states. ... They are not classified under 2 aggregates, under 11 bases and under 17 elements (18).

209. Consciousness is not classified with these states under the same aggregate, under the same base and under the same element.

Those states are not classified with these states. ... They are not classified under 4 aggregates, under 11 bases and under 11 elements (1).

## Triplets

p. 74

210. Wholesome states are not classified with these states; Unwholesome states; States associated with pleasant feeling; States associated with painful feeling; States associated with feeling that is neither painful nor pleasant; Resultant states; States producing resultant states; States which are not acquired by clinging and not favourable to clinging; Corrupt and corrupting states; Not corrupt and not corrupting states; States with applied-thought and sustained-thought; States without applied-thought but with sustained-thought; States accompanied by rapture; States accompanied by pleasure; States accompanied by indifference; States eradicated by First Path; States eradicated by Higher 3 Paths; States together with roots eradicated by First Path; States together with roots eradicated by Higher 3 Paths; States leading to rebirth and death; States leading to Nibbāna; States appertaining to Learners; States appertaining to Arahatta; Lofty states; Incomparable states; States with limited objects; States with lofty objects; States with incomparable objects; Low states; Exalted states; States



with fixed destiny due to wrong views; States with fixed destiny due to right views; States with Path objects; States conditioned by the Path; States dominated by the Path; States with past objects; States with future objects; States with present objects; States with internal objects; States with external objects; States with internal and external objects are not classified with these states under the same aggregate, under the same base and under the same element.

Those states are not classified with these states. ... They are not classified under 1 aggregate, under 10 bases and under 10 elements (41).

211. States both visible and impinging; States invisible but impinging are not classified with these states under the same aggregate, under the same base and under the same element.

Those states are not classified with these states. ... They are not classified under 4 aggregates, under 2 bases and under 8 elements (2).

## Couplets

212. States which are roots are not classified with these states; States which are roots and also have associated roots; States which are roots and also associated with roots are not classified with these | states under the same aggregate, under the same base and under the same element.

p. 75

Those states are not classified with these states. ... They are not classified under 2 aggregates, under 11 bases and under 17 elements (3).

213. States which have associated roots; States which are associated with roots; States which have associated roots but are not roots; States which are associated with roots but are not roots; States which are not roots but have associated roots are not classified with these states under the same aggregate, under the same base and under the same element.

Those states are not classified with these states. ... They are not classified under 1 aggregate, under 10 bases and under 10 elements (5).

214. States not arising from 4 causes; States not conditioned by 4 causes are not classified with these states under the same aggregate, under the same base and under the same element.

Those states are not classified with these states. ... They are not classified under 2 aggregates, under 11 bases and under 17 elements (2).

215. States with visibility; States with impinging are not classified with these states under the same aggregate, under the same base and under the same element.

Those states are not classified with these states. ... They are not classified under 4 aggregates, under 2 bases and under 8 elements (2).

216. States which have physical change are not classified with these states under the same aggregate, under the same base and under the same element.

Those states are not classified with these states. ... They are not classified under 1 aggregate, under 1 base and under 7 elements (1).

217. States which have no physical change; States which are Supramundane are not classified with these states under the same aggregate, under the same base and under the same element.

Those states are not classified with these states. ... They are not classified under 1 aggregate, under 10 bases and under 10 elements (2).

p. 76 218. States which are cankers; States which are both cankers and objects of cankers; States which are both cankers and associated | with cankers are not classified with these states under the same aggregate, under the same base and under the same element.

Those states are not classified with these states. ... They are not classified under 2 aggregates, under 11 bases and under 17 elements (3).

219. States which are not objects of cankers; States which are associated with cankers; States which are associated with cankers but are not cankers; States which are dissociated from cankers and are not objects of cankers are not classified with these states under the same aggregate, under the same base and under the same element.

Those states are not classified with these states. ... They are not

classified under 1 aggregate, under 10 bases and under 10 elements (4).

220. States which are fetters<sup>1</sup> ...States which are ties ...States which are floods ...States which are bonds ...States which are hindrances ...States which are misapprehensions; States which are both misapprehensions and objects of misapprehensions are not classified with these states under the same aggregate, under the same base and under the same element.

Those states are not classified with these states. ...They are not classified under 2 aggregates, under 11 bases and under 17 elements (37).

221. States which are not objects of misapprehensions; States which are associated with misapprehensions; States which are dissociated from misapprehensions and are not objects of misapprehensions; States which have objects are not classified with these states under the same aggregate, under the same base and under the same element.

Those states are not classified with these states. ...They are not classified under 1 aggregate, under 10 bases and under 10 elements (4).

222. States which have no objects; States which are not consciousness; States which are dissociated from consciousness; States which are not conjoined with consciousness; States which are generated by consciousness; States which arise together with consciousness; States which arise successively with consciousness; States which are external; States which are derived are not classified | with these states under the same aggregate, under the same base and under the same element.

p. 77

Those states are not classified with these states. ...They are not classified under 1 aggregate, under 1 base and under 7 elements (9).

223. States which are consciousness are not classified with these states under the same aggregate, under the same base and under the same element.

Those states are not classified with these states. ...They are not

---

<sup>1</sup>The cluster of fetters and so on should be taken 7 each as shown in Canker cluster Nos. 218 and 219.

classified under 4 aggregates, under 11 bases and under 11 elements (1).

224. States which are mental factors; States which are associated with consciousness; States which are conjoined with consciousness; States which are both conjoined with and are generated by consciousness; States which are conjoined with, are generated by and arise together with consciousness; States which are conjoined with, are generated by and arise successively with consciousness are not classified with these states under the same aggregate, under the same base and under the same element.

Those states are not classified with these states. ... They are not classified under 2 aggregates, under 11 bases and under 17 elements (6).

225. States which are internal are not classified with these states under the same aggregate, under the same base and under the same element.

Those states are not classified with these states. ... They are not classified under 3 aggregates, under 1 base and under 1 element (1).

226. States which are clinging ... States which are corruptions; States which are both corruptions and objects of corruptions; States which are both corruptions and corrupt; States which are both corruptions and associated with corruptions are not classified with these states under the same aggregate, under the same base and under the same element.

Those states are not classified with these states. ... They are not classified under 2 aggregates, under 11 bases and under 17 elements (11).

p. 78 227. States which are not objects of corruptions; States which are corrupt; States which are associated with corruptions; States which are corrupt but are not corruptions; States which are | associated with corruptions but are not corruptions; States which are dissociated from corruptions and are not objects of corruptions; States eradicated by the First Path; States eradicated by the Higher 3 Paths; States together with roots eradicated by the First Path; States together with roots eradicated by the Higher 3 Paths; States with applied-thought; States with sustained-thought; States with rapture; States which are

accompanied by rapture; States which are accompanied by pleasure; States which are accompanied by indifference; States which do not belong to the sensuous plane; States which belong to the fine-material plane; States which belong to the immaterial plane; States which are not included in the round of existences; States which lead out from the round of existences; States which have fixed destiny yielded after decease or after their own occurrence; States which are not with beyond; States which are causes of lamentation are not classified with these states under the same aggregate, under the same base and under the same element.

Those states are not classified with these states under the same aggregate, under the same base and under the same element.

Under how many aggregates, under how many bases and under how many elements are those states not classified? They are not classified under 1 aggregate, under 10 bases and under 10 elements (24).

## **Mnemonic**

- (a) All the aggregates, all the bases and elements, three truths,  
 All the faculties, twenty-three dependent originations,  
 Next sixteen, forty-three triplets,  
 Seventy-two clusters, seven lesser intermediate couplets,  
 Eighteen belonging to greater intermediate couplets, and then  
 Eighteen kinds of last couplets. These (257) kinds of states are  
 expounded,  
 By the Buddha in the system of Chapter V. The remaining (114)  
 are not expounded.
- (b) Matter aggregate, cognizable base, cognizable element,  
 Female and male faculties, life faculty, mentality-materiality,  
 Two becomings, birth, ageing, death, physical states,  
 Objectless states, non-consciousness, dissociated from consciousness,  
 Not conjoined with consciousness, generated with consciousness,

p. 79

| Arising together with consciousness, arising successively with consciousness,  
External, derived states. The method of this question and answer should be properly understood.

## Explanation of the Method and Chart of Chapter V

*Subject Matter:* 257 states which are a part of the 5 aggregates or those that stand for Nibbāna form the subject matter of this chapter. These are the states that cannot be classified with other states (known as the first “these states” in the Chart) under the same aggregate, under the same base and under the same element.

Again the other states (known as “those states” in the Chart) cannot be classified with the possible states<sup>1</sup> (known as second “these states” in the Chart) under the same aggregate, under the same base and under the same element, in the second unclassification.

Those states which include both subtle matter and consciousness aggregate cannot be treated in this manner and are therefore excluded. Out of the 257 states, 99 belong to the internal and 158 belong to the external states of enquiry.

*“These states” and “those states”:* The rules for determining “these states” and “those states” are as follows:

1. When matter aggregate is the subject of enquiry, consciousness aggregate, which does not come under the same aggregate, under the same base and under the same element, is taken as the first “these states”. Matter aggregate, unlike consciousness aggregate, comes under 1 aggregate (matter aggregate), under 11 bases (10 gross bases and cognizable base) and under 11 elements (10 gross elements and cognizable element). So these form the first unclassified aggregate, bases and elements. Then consciousness aggregate (the first “these states”) becomes the first “those states” and the 28 physical states of matter ag-

---

<sup>1</sup>The states which are not under the same aggregates, bases and elements.

gregate, feeling, perception, mental formations and Nibbāna, which do not come under the same aggregate, under the same base and under the same element, are taken as the second “these states” (and then becomes the second “those states”). The latter are not classified under 1 aggregate (consciousness aggregate), under 1 base (mind base) and under 7 elements (consciousness elements). So they form the second unclassified aggregates, bases and elements.

The classification and unclassification under the aggregates, bases and elements of the states above have been given in detail in this first example. In the following examples, this will be briefly indicated but the details are given in the Chart. They can also be found by reference to the classification of the states given in [Chapter I](#). p. 80

2. When either feeling, perception, mental formations or Nibbāna is dealt with, the 12 gross physical states and consciousness aggregate are taken as the first “these states”. (If the 28 physical states of matter aggregate are taken, then some of them, *i.e.* subtle physical states, will come under the same base and under the same element). When the first “these states” now taken as the first “those states” are dealt with in turn, feeling, perception, mental formations and Nibbāna, which do not come under the same aggregate, under the same base and under the same element, are taken as the second “these states” and later becomes the second “those states”.
3. When consciousness aggregate is dealt with, 28 physical states of matter aggregate, feeling, perception, mental formations and Nibbāna are taken as the first “these states”. Then when the latter states taken as the first “those states” are dealt with, consciousness aggregate, which does not come under the same aggregate, under the same base and under the same element is taken as the second “these states” and later becomes the second “those states”.
4. When a gross physical state such as eye base is dealt with, the 4 mental aggregates and Nibbāna are taken as the first “these states”. Then when the latter states taken as the first “those

states” are dealt with in turn, the 12 gross physical states are taken as the second “these states” and later as the second “those states”. When a subtle physical state such as female faculty is dealt with, consciousness aggregate is taken as the first “these states”. When the latter state taken as the first “those states” is dealt with in turn, 28 physical states of matter aggregate, feeling, perception, mental formations and Nibbāna are taken as the second “these states” and later becomes the second “those states”. This female faculty is the same as matter aggregate but it is not shown in the Chart.

p. 81

5. When the bases (which are the 5 physical bases such as eye base, etc., and mind base) are dealt with, feeling, perception, mental formations and Nibbāna are taken as the first “these states”. | When the latter states taken as the first “those states” are dealt with in turn, 12 gross physical states and consciousness aggregate are taken as the second “these states” and later as the second “those states”.
6. When immaterial becoming, which comprises the four mental aggregates is dealt with, 12 gross physical states are taken as the first “these states”. When the latter states taken as the first “those states” are dealt with in turn, the 4 mental aggregates and Nibbāna are taken as the second “these states” and later as the second “those states”.

*The Basic Rule:* When dealing with a particular state or states, all the other states that cannot be classified under the same aggregate, base and element must be taken as the comparative states.

*How to read the Chart*<sup>1</sup>: Matter aggregate is taken as an illustration. Matter aggregate is not classified with these states (consciousness aggregate) under the same aggregate (matter aggregate 1) under the same base (10 gross bases and cognizable base, *i.e.* 11) and under the same element (10 gross elements and cognizable element, *i.e.* 11). Those states (consciousness aggregate) are not classified with these states (28 physical states of matter aggregate, feeling, perception, mental formations and Nibbāna) under the same aggregate (con-

---

<sup>1</sup>See Method of Chapter V: *Unclassified and Classified* on page 218.



sciousness aggregate 1), under the same base (mind base 1) and under the same element (consciousness elements 7).

Under how many aggregates, under how many bases and under how many elements are those states (28 physical states of matter aggregate, feeling, perception, mental formations and Nibbāna) not classified? They are not classified under 1 aggregate (consciousness aggregate), under 1 base (mind base) and under 7 elements (consciousness elements 7).

*The kinds of Answers:* There are 6 kinds of answers. There are so many sets of questions and answers in this chapter that all of them cannot be included in the Chart.

	Question Numbers	States
1.	193 (1), 197 (5), 202 (1), 206 (5), 216 (1), 222 (9)	22
2.	194 (3), 198 (3), 200 (15), 204 (5), 208 (18), 212 (3), 214 (2), 218 (3), 220 (17), 224 (6), 226 (7)	82
3.	195 (10), 201 (1), 209 (1), 223 (1)	13
4.	196 (20), 199 (5), 207 (1), 211 (2), 215 (2)	30
5.	203 (1), 225 (1)	2
6.	206 (4), 210 (41), 213 (5), 217 (2), 219 (4), 220 (20), 221 (4), 226 (4), 227 (24)	108
	Total:	257

The kinds of aggregates, bases and elements corresponding to the numbers are to be found in the last unclassified column. So the kinds of the second “those states” are the same as the aggregates, bases and elements of the answers. p. 82



# VI

## Association and Dissociation

### 78 Questions and Answers

#### 1. Aggregates

228. With how many aggregates, with how many bases and with how many elements is Matter aggregate associated? With none. p. 83

From how many is it dissociated? It is dissociated from 4 aggregates, from 1 base and from 7 elements; partially dissociated from 1 base and from 1 element (1).

229. ...Feeling aggregate; Perception aggregate; Mental formation aggregate is associated with 3 aggregates, with 1 base and with 7 elements; partially associated with 1 base and with 1 element.

From how many is it dissociated? It is dissociated from 1 aggregate, from 10 bases and from 10 elements; partially dissociated from 1 base and from 1 element (3).

230. ...Consciousness aggregate is associated with 3 aggregates; partially associated with 1 base and with 1 element.

From how many is it dissociated? It is dissociated from 1 aggregate, from 10 bases and from 10 elements; partially dissociated from 1 base and from 1 element (1).

## 2. Bases

231. With how many ... is Eye base ... Tangible Object base associated? With none.

From how many is it dissociated? It is dissociated from 4 aggregates, from 1 base and from 7 elements; partially dissociated from 1 base and from 1 element (10).

232. Mind base is associated with 3 aggregates; partially associated with 1 base and with 1 element.

From how many is it dissociated? It is dissociated from 1 aggregate, from 10 bases and from 10 elements; partially dissociated from 1 base and from 1 element (1).

## 3. Elements

233. With how many ... is Eye element ... Tangible Object element associated? With none.

p. 84 From how many is it dissociated? It is dissociated from 4 aggregates, from 1 base and from 7 elements; partially dissociated from 1 base and from 1 element (10).

234. Eye consciousness element ... Mind element; Mind consciousness element is associated with 3 aggregates; partially associated with 1 base and with 1 element.

From how many is it dissociated? It is dissociated from 1 aggregate, from 10 bases and from 16 elements; partially dissociated from 1 base and from 1 element (7).

## 4. Truths and so on

235. Origin truth; Path truth is associated with 3 aggregates, with 1 base and with 1 element; partially associated with 1 aggregate, with 1 base and with 1 element.

From how many is it dissociated? It is dissociated from 1 aggregate, from 10 bases and from 16 elements; partially dissociated from 1 base and from 1 element (2).

236. With how many ... is Cessation truth; Eye faculty ... Body faculty; Female faculty; Male faculty associated 1 With none.

From how many is it dissociated? It is dissociated from 4 aggregates, from 1 base and from 7 elements; partially dissociated from 1 base and from 1 element (8).

237. Mind faculty is associated with 3 aggregates; partially associated with 1 base and with 1 element.

From how many is it dissociated? It is dissociated from 1 aggregate, from 10 bases and from 10 elements; partially dissociated from 1 base and from 1 element (1).

238. Bodily pleasure faculty; Bodily pain faculty; Mental joy faculty; Grief faculty is associated with 3 aggregates, with 1 base and with 1 element; partially associated with 1 base and with 1 element.

From how many is it dissociated? It is dissociated from 1 aggregate, from 10 bases and from 16 elements; partially dissociated from 1 base and from 1 element (4).

239. Indifference faculty is associated with 3 aggregates, with 1 base and with 6 elements; partially associated with 1 base and with 1 element.

From how many is it dissociated? It is dissociated from 1 aggregate, from 10 bases and from 11 elements; partially dissociated from 1 base and from 1 element (1).

240. Faith faculty; Energy faculty; Mindfulness faculty; Concentration faculty; Wisdom faculty; I-shall-know-what-I-did-not-know faculty; Higher realization faculty; He-who-has-known faculty; Ignorance; Conditioned by ignorance, Mental formations are associated with 3 aggregates, with 1 base and with 1 element; partially associated with 1 aggregate, with 1 base and with 1 element. p. 85

From how many is it dissociated? It is dissociated from 1 aggregate, from 10 bases and from 16 elements; partially dissociated from 1 base and from 1 element (10).

241. Conditioned by formations, Consciousness is associated with 3 aggregates; partially associated with 1 base and with 1 element.

From how many is it dissociated? It is dissociated from 1 aggregate, from 10 bases and from 10 elements; partially dissociated from 1 base and from 1 element (1).

242. Conditioned by 6 bases, Contact is associated with 3 aggre-

gates, with 1 base and with 7 elements; partially associated with 1 aggregate, with 1 base and with 1 element.

From how many is it dissociated? It is dissociated from 1 aggregate, from 10 bases and from 10 elements; partially dissociated from 1 base and from 1 element (1).

243. Conditioned by contact, Feeling is associated with 3 aggregates, with 1 base and with 7 elements; partially associated with 1 base and with 1 element.

From how many is it dissociated? It is dissociated from 1 aggregate, from 10 bases and from 10 elements; partially dissociated from 1 base and from 1 element (1).

244. Conditioned by feeling, Craving; Conditioned by craving, Clinging; Kamma becoming is associated with 3 aggregates, with 1 base and with 1 element; partially associated with 1 aggregate, with 1 base and with 1 element.

From how many is it dissociated? It is dissociated from 1 aggregate, from 10 bases and from 16 elements; partially dissociated from 1 base and from 1 element (3).

245. With how many ...is Fine-material becoming associated? With none.

From how many is it dissociated? It is not dissociated from any aggregates, not dissociated from any bases; it is dissociated from 3 elements (1).

246. With how many ...is Immaterial becoming; Neither p. 86 perception nor non-perception becoming; Four-aggregate becoming associated? With none.

From how many is it dissociated? It is dissociated from 1 aggregate, from 10 bases and from 16 elements; partially dissociated from 1 base and from 1 element (3).

247. With how many ...is Non-percepted becoming; One-aggregate becoming; Lamentation associated? With none.

From how many is it dissociated? It is dissociated from 4 aggregates, from 1 base and from 7 elements; partially dissociated from 1 base and from 1 element (3).

248. Sorrow; Suffering; Grief is associated with 3 aggregates, with

1 base and with 1 element; partially associated with 1 base and with 1 element.

From how many is it dissociated? It is dissociated from 1 aggregate, from 10 bases and from 16 elements; partially dissociated from 1 base and from 1 element (3).

249. Despair; Application of mindfulness; Great effort is associated with 3 aggregates, with 1 base and with 1 element; partially associated with 1 aggregate, with 1 base and with 1 element.

From how many is it dissociated? It is dissociated from 1 aggregate, from 10 bases and from 16 elements; partially dissociated from 1 base and from 1 element (3).

250. Road to psychic power<sup>1</sup> is associated with 2 aggregates; partially associated with 1 aggregate, with 1 base and with 1 element.

From how many is it dissociated? It is dissociated from 1 aggregate, from 10 bases and from 16 elements; partially dissociated from 1 base and from 1 element (1).

251. Jhāna is associated with 2 aggregates, with 1 base and with 1 element; partially associated with 1 aggregate, with 1 base and with 1 element.

From how many is it dissociated? It is dissociated from 1 aggregate, from 10 bases and from 16 elements; partially dissociated from 1 base and from 1 element (1).

252. Illimitables; 5 Faculties; 5 Strengths; 7 Factors of Enlightenment; Noble Eightfold Path is associated with 3 aggregates, | with 1 base and with 1 element; partially associated with 1 aggregate, with 1 base and with 1 element. p. 87

From how many is it dissociated? It is dissociated from 1 aggregate, from 10 bases and from 16 elements; partially dissociated from 1 base and from 1 element (5).

253. Contact; Volition; Attention is associated with 3 aggregates, with 1 base and with 7 elements; partially associated with 1 aggregate, with 1 base and with 1 element.

From how many is it dissociated? It is dissociated from 1 aggregate

---

<sup>1</sup>In road to psychic power as consciousness is included, partially associated with aggregate is needed.

gate, from 10 bases and from 10 elements; partially dissociated from 1 base and from 1 element (3).

254. Feeling; Perception is associated with 3 aggregates, with 1 base and with 7 elements; partially associated with 1 base and with 1 element.

From how many is it dissociated? It is dissociated from 1 aggregate, from 10 bases and from 10 elements; partially dissociated from 1 base and from 1 element (2).

255. Consciousness is associated with 3 aggregates; partially associated with 1 base and with 1 element.

From how many is it dissociated? It is dissociated from 1 aggregate, from 10 bases and from 10 elements; partially dissociated from 1 base and from 1 element (1).

256. Decision is associated with 3 aggregates, with 1 base and with 2 elements; partially associated with 1 aggregate, with 1 base and with 1 element.

From how many is it dissociated? It is dissociated from 1 aggregate, from 10 bases and from 15 elements; partially dissociated from 1 base and from 1 element (1).

## 5. Triplets

257. With how many aggregates, with how many bases and with how many elements are Wholesome states and Unwholesome states associated? With none.

From how many are they dissociated? They are dissociated from 1 aggregate, from 10 bases and from 16 elements; partially dissociated from 1 base and from 1 element (2).

258. States associated with pleasant feeling; States associated with painful feeling are associated with 1 aggregate; partially associated with 1 base and with 1 element.

p. 88 From how many are they dissociated? They are dissociated from 1 aggregate, from 10 bases and from 15 elements; partially dissociated from 1 base and from 1 element (2).

259. States associated with feeling that is neither painful nor



pleasant are associated with 1 aggregate; partially associated with 1 base and with 1 element.

From how many are they dissociated? They are dissociated from 1 aggregate, from 10 bases and from 11 elements; partially dissociated from 1 base and from 1 element (1).

260. With how many ... are Resultant states associated? With none.

From how many are they dissociated? They are dissociated from 1 aggregate, from 10 bases and from 10 elements; partially dissociated from 1 base and from 1 element (1).

261. With how many ... are the States producing resultant states; Corrupt and corrupting states associated? With none.

From how many are they dissociated? They are dissociated from 1 aggregate, from 10 bases and from 16 elements; partially dissociated from 1 base and from 1 element (2).

262. With how many ... are the States which are neither resultant nor producing resultant states; States which are not acquired by clinging but favourable to clinging associated? With none.

From how many are they dissociated? They are not dissociated from any aggregates, not dissociated from any bases; they are dissociated from 5 elements (2).

263. With how many ... are the States which are not acquired by clinging and not favourable to clinging; Not corrupt and not corrupting states associated? With none.

From how many are they dissociated? They are not dissociated from any aggregates, not dissociated from any bases; they are dissociated from 6 elements (2).

264. States with applied-thought and sustained-thought are partially associated with 1 aggregate, with 1 base and with 1 element.

From how many are they dissociated? They are dissociated from 1 aggregate, from 10 bases and from 15 elements; partially dissociated from 1 base and from 1 element (1).

265. States without applied-thought but with sustained-thought; States accompanied by rapture are partially associated with 1 aggregate, with 1 base and with 1 element.

From how many are they dissociated? They are dissociated | from p. 89

1 aggregate, from 10 bases and from 16 elements; partially dissociated from 1 base and from 1 element (2).

266. With how many ... are the States without applied-thought and sustained-thought associated? With none.

From how many are they dissociated? They are not dissociated from any aggregates, not dissociated from any bases; they are dissociated from 1 element (1).

267. States accompanied by pleasure are associated with 1 aggregate; partially associated with 1 base and with 1 element.

From how many are they dissociated? They are dissociated from 1 aggregate, from 10 bases and from 15 elements; partially dissociated from 1 base and from 1 element (1).

268. States accompanied by indifference are associated with 1 aggregate; partially associated with 1 base and with 1 element.

From how many are they dissociated? They are dissociated from 1 aggregate, from 10 bases and from 11 elements; partially dissociated from 1 base and from 1 element (1).

269. With how many ... are the States eradicated by First Path; States eradicated by Higher 3 Paths; States together with roots eradicated by First Path; States together with roots eradicated by Higher 3 Paths; States leading to rebirth and death; States leading to Nibbāna; States appertaining to Learners; States appertaining to Arahatta; Lofty states associated? With none.

From how many are they dissociated? They are dissociated from 1 aggregate, from 10 bases and from 16 elements; partially dissociated from 1 base and from 1 element (9).

270. With how many ... are the Incomparable states; Exalted states associated? With none.

From how many are they dissociated? They are not dissociated from any aggregates, not dissociated from any bases; they are dissociated from 6 elements (2).

271. With how many ... are the States with limited objects associated? With none.

From how many are they dissociated? They are dissociated from 1 aggregate, from 10 bases and from 10 elements; partially dissociated from 1 base and from 1 element (1).

272. With how many ...are the States with lofty objects; States with incomparable objects; Low states; States with fixed destiny due to wrong views; States with fixed destiny due to right views; | States with Path objects; States conditioned by the Path; States dominated by the Path associated? With none. p. 90

From how many are they dissociated? They are dissociated from 1 aggregate, from 10 bases and from 16 elements; partially dissociated from 1 base and from 1 element (8).

273. With how many ...are the States not arisen associated? With none.

From how many are they dissociated? They are not dissociated from any aggregates, not dissociated from any bases; they are dissociated from 5 elements (1).

274. With how many ...are the States with past objects; States with future objects associated? With none.

From how many are they dissociated? They are dissociated from 1 aggregate, from 10 bases and from 16 elements; partially dissociated from 1 base and from 1 element (2).

275. With how many ...are the States with present objects; States with internal objects; States with external objects; States with internal and external objects associated? With none.

From how many are they dissociated? They are dissociated from 1 aggregate, from 10 bases and from 10 elements; partially dissociated from 1 base and from 1 element (4).

276. With how many ...are the States both visible and impinging; States invisible but impinging associated? With none.

From how many are they dissociated? They are dissociated from 4 aggregates, from 1 base and from 7 elements; partially dissociated from 1 base and from 1 element (2).

## 6. Couplets

277. States which are roots; States which are roots and also have associated roots; States which are roots and also associated with roots are associated with 3 aggregates, with 1 base and with 1 element; partially associated with 1 aggregate, with 1 base and with 1 element.

From how many are they dissociated? They are dissociated from 1 aggregate, from 10 bases and from 16 elements; partially dissociated from 1 base and from 1 element (3).

278. With how many ...are the States which have associated roots; States which are associated with roots associated? With none.

p. 91 From how many are they dissociated? They are dissociated | from 1 aggregate, from 10 bases and from 16 elements; partially dissociated from 1 base and from 1 element (2).

279. States which have associated roots but are not roots; States which are associated with roots but are not roots; States which are not roots but have associated roots are partially associated with 1 aggregate, with 1 base and with 1 element.

From how many are they dissociated? They are dissociated from 1 aggregate, from 10 bases and from 16 elements; partially dissociated from 1 base and from 1 element (3).

280. With how many ...are the States not arising from 4 causes; States not conditioned by 4 causes; States with visibility; States with impinging; States which have physical change associated? With none.

From how many are they dissociated? They are dissociated from 4 aggregates, from 1 base and from 7 elements; partially dissociated from 1 base and from 1 element (5).

281. With how many ...are the States which are Supramundane associated? With none.

From how many are they dissociated? They are not dissociated from any aggregates, not dissociated from any bases; they are dissociated from 6 elements (1).

282. States which are cankers; States which are both cankers and objects of cankers; States which are both cankers and associated with cankers are associated with 3 aggregates, with 1 base and with 1 element; partially associated with 1 aggregate, with 1 base and with 1 element.

From how many are they dissociated? They are dissociated from 1 aggregate, from 10 bases and from 16 elements; partially dissociated from 1 base and from 1 element (3).

283. With how many ...are the States which are not objects of

cankers; States which are dissociated from cankers and are not objects of cankers associated? With none.

From how many are they dissociated? They are not dissociated from any aggregates, not dissociated from any bases; they are dissociated from 6 elements (2).

284. With how many ... are the States which are associated with cankers associated? With none.

From how many are they dissociated? They are dissociated from 1 aggregate, from 10 bases and from 16 elements; partially dissociated from 1 base and from 1 element (1).

285. States which are associated with cankers but are not cankers are partially associated with 1 aggregate, with 1 base and with 1 element. p. 92

From how many are they dissociated? They are dissociated from 1 aggregate, from 10 bases and from 16 elements; partially dissociated from 1 base and from 1 element (1).

286. States which are fetters ... States which are ties ... States which are floods ... States which are bonds ... States which are hindrances<sup>1</sup> ... States which are misapprehensions; States which are both misapprehensions and objects of misapprehensions are associated with 3 aggregates, with 1 base and with 1 element; partially associated with 1 aggregate, with 1 base and with 1 element.

From how many are they dissociated? They are dissociated from 1 aggregate, from 10 bases and from 16 elements; partially dissociated from 1 base and from 1 element (37).

287. With how many ... are the States which are not objects of misapprehensions; States which are dissociated from misapprehensions and are not objects of misapprehensions associated? With none.

From how many are they dissociated? They are not dissociated from any aggregates, not dissociated from any bases; they are dissociated from 6 elements (2).

288. States which are associated with misapprehensions are partially associated with 1 aggregate, with 1 base and with 1 element.

From how many are they dissociated? They are dissociated from

---

<sup>1</sup>These 5 clusters are to be taken seven each as in Nos. 282, 283, 284 and 285.

1 aggregate, from 10 bases and from 16 elements; partially dissociated from 1 base and from 1 element (1).

289. With how many ... are the States which have objects associated? With none.

From how many are they dissociated? They are dissociated from 1 aggregate, from 10 bases and from 10 elements; partially dissociated from 1 base and from 1 element (1).

290. With how many ... are the States which have no objects; States which are dissociated from consciousness; States which are not conjoined with consciousness; States which are derived associated? With none.

From how many are they dissociated? They are dissociated from 4 aggregates, from 1 base and from 7 elements; partially dissociated from 1 base and from 1 element (4).

p. 93

291. States which are consciousness are associated with 3 aggregates; partially associated with 1 base and with 1 element.

From how many are they dissociated? They are dissociated from 1 aggregate, from 10 bases and from 10 elements; partially dissociated from 1 base and from 1 element (1).

292. States which are mental factors; States which are associated with consciousness; States which are conjoined with consciousness; States which are both conjoined with and are generated by consciousness; States which are conjoined with, are generated by and arise together with consciousness; States which are conjoined with, are generated by and arise successively with consciousness are associated with 1 aggregate, with 1 base and with 7 elements.

From how many are they dissociated? They are dissociated from 1 aggregate, from 10 bases and from 10 elements; partially dissociated from 1 base and from 1 element (6).

293. With how many ... are the States which are not acquired by clinging associated? With none.

From how many are they dissociated? They are not dissociated from any aggregates, not dissociated from any bases; they are dissociated from 5 elements (1).

294. States which are clinging ... States which are corruptions; States which are both corruptions and objects of corruptions; States

which are both corruptions and corrupt; States which are both corruptions and associated with corruptions are associated with 3 aggregates, with 1 base and with 1 element; partially associated with 1 aggregate, with 1 base and with 1 element.

From how many are they dissociated? They are dissociated from 1 aggregate, from 10 bases and from 16 elements; partially dissociated from 1 base and from 1 element (11).

295. With how many ... are the States which are not objects of corruptions; States which are dissociated from corruptions and are not objects of corruptions associated? With none.

From how many are they dissociated? They are not dissociated from any aggregates, not dissociated from any bases; they are dissociated from 6 elements (2).

296. With how many ... are the States which are corrupt; States which are associated with corruptions associated? With none.

From how many are they dissociated? They are dissociated from 1 aggregate, from 10 bases and from 16 elements; partially dissociated from 1 base and from 1 element (2).

297. States which are corrupt but are not corruptions; States which are associated with corruptions but are not corruptions are partially associated with 1 aggregate, with 1 base and with 1 element. p. 94

From how many are they dissociated? They are dissociated from 1 aggregate, from 10 bases and from 16 elements; partially dissociated from 1 base and from 1 element (2).

298. With how many ... are the States eradicated by First Path; States eradicated by Higher 3 Paths; States together with roots eradicated by First Path; States together with roots eradicated by Higher 3 Paths associated? With none.

From how many are they dissociated? They are dissociated from 1 aggregate, from 10 bases and from 16 elements; partially dissociated from 1 base and from 1 element (4).

299. States with applied-thought; States with sustained-thought are partially associated with 1 aggregate, with 1 base and with 1 element.

From how many are they dissociated? They are dissociated from

1 aggregate, from 10 bases and from 15 elements; partially dissociated from 1 base and from 1 element (2).

300. With how many ... are the States without applied-thought; States without sustained-thought associated? With none.

From how many are they dissociated? They are not dissociated from any aggregates, not dissociated from any bases; they are dissociated from 1 element (2).

301. States with rapture; States which are accompanied by rapture are partially associated with 1 aggregate, with 1 base and with 1 element.

From how many are they dissociated? They are dissociated from 1 aggregate, from 10 bases and from 16 elements; partially dissociated from 1 base and from 1 element (2).

302. States which are accompanied by pleasure are associated with 1 aggregate; partially associated with 1 base and with 1 element.

From how many are they dissociated? They are dissociated from 1 aggregate, from 10 bases and from 15 elements; partially dissociated from 1 base and from 1 element (1).

303. States which are accompanied by indifference are associated with 1 aggregate; partially associated with 1 base and with 1 element.

p. 95 From how many are they dissociated? They are dissociated from 1 aggregate, from 10 bases and from 11 elements; partially dissociated from 1 base and from 1 element (1).

304. With how many ... are the States which do not belong to the sensuous plane; States which are not included in the round of existences; States which are not with beyond associated? With none.

From how many are they dissociated? They are not dissociated from any aggregates, not dissociated from any bases; they are dissociated from 6 elements (3).

305. With how many aggregates, with how many bases and with how many elements are the States which belong to the fine-material plane; States which belong to the immaterial plane; States which lead out from the round of existences; States which have fixed destiny yielded after decease or after their own occurrence; States which are causes of lamentation associated? With none.

From how many are they dissociated? They are dissociated from



1 aggregate, from 10 bases and from 16 elements; partially dissociated from 1 base and from 1 element (5).

## Mnemonic

Cognizable base, cognizable element, suffering truth, life faculty,  
Six bases, mentality-materiality, four greater becomings,  
Birth, ageing, death, nineteen triplets,  
Fifty clusters, eight lesser intermediate couplets,  
Fifteen greater intermediate couplets, and then eighteen last couplets,  
These 123 states are not considered here.

## Explanation of the Method and Chart of Chapter VI

*Subject Matter:* States that are 1. associated, 2. dissociated and 3. both associated and dissociated.

1. *Association:* The 4 mental aggregates are mutually associated (1 with 3, 3 with 1, 2 with 2) because
  - (a) they arise together,
  - (b) cease together,
  - (c) have the same object and
  - (d) the same basis.

These are the four characteristics of association.

2. *Dissociation:* The states are said to be dissociated when they do not comply with the 4 characteristics of association.
  - (a) *Always Dissociated:* (i) Materiality and the 4 mental aggregates, (ii) Nibbāna and the 4 mental aggregates are always dissociated.
    - i. Materiality produced by mind which, from the first life-continuum after rebirth-consciousness right up to death-consciousness with the exception of the 4 immaterial resultant consciousness, 2 x 5 sense consciousness and the last death-consciousness of the

Arahat arises simultaneously with each consciousness. Materiality produced by kamma also arises simultaneously with the mental aggregates at the moment of conception. These last for 17 thought moments or 51 phases and then cease simultaneously with some kind of consciousness. The two intimations produced by mind also arise and cease together with consciousness. Because the 4 mental aggregates and materiality arise and cease together as shown above, it is questionable whether they are associated or dissociated. To clear up all doubts on this matter, the Buddha expounded it here and also in the dissociation condition of the Paṭṭhāna. In the latter the context is “Materiality is related to mentality by way of dissociation condition. Mentality is related to materiality by way of dissociation condition”.

- ii. Nibbāna is said to be mentality because the subjective consciousness and mental factors realize and incline towards it as object. Consciousness and mental factors are also mentality. Since Nibbāna and consciousness together with the mental factors are both mentality, it would appear that they are associated. But the Buddha has expounded here that they are dissociated and not associated.
- (b) *Sometimes Dissociated*: With regard to the 4 mental aggregates, if feeling and the other 3, perception and the other 3, mental formation and the other 3, consciousness and the other 3 comply with the 4 characteristics of association, they are associated. Otherwise they are dissociated.
  - (c) *Neither Associated nor Dissociated*: (1) Materiality and Nibbāna, (2) materiality and materiality, (3) feeling and feeling, (4) perception and perception, (5) mental formation and mental formation, (6) consciousness and consciousness, (7) contact and contact, (8) volition and volition, etc. These pairs never comply with the 4 characteristics of association. So they are neither associated nor

dissociated. Just as it cannot be said that one is like or unlike oneself, but only that one is like or unlike another, so also it cannot be said that earth is associated with or dissociated from earth or feeling is associated with or dissociated from feeling. Therefore, they are neither associated nor dissociated.

*Exceptions:* When it is said that mental formation and mental | formation are neither associated nor dissociated p. 97 it means that with the 50 states of mental formation aggregate, contact and contact, volition and volition and so on are neither associated nor dissociated. But contact and volition, contact and wisdom and such pairs of different states of mental formation aggregate are associated. Similarly, when it is said that consciousness and consciousness are neither associated nor dissociated this is meant in the case of eye-consciousness and eye-consciousness and so on for like pairs. But the eye-consciousness and the remaining 6 consciousness are dissociated.

(d) *Four kinds of Dissociation:*

- i. Dissociation by planes: This is the difference between the sensuous, fine material, immaterial and supramundane planes.
- ii. Dissociation by classes: This is the difference between wholesome, unwholesome, resultant, inoperative, root-conditioned and non-root-conditioned classes of consciousness. The wholesome and unwholesome consciousness differ in class and, therefore, they are said to be dissociated by classes.
- iii. Dissociation by times: This is the difference between the past, future and present. Although the wholesome consciousness of the past is the same as that of the future and the present, they differ in time and, therefore, they are said to be dissociated by times.
- iv. Dissociation by continuity (*Santāna*): This is the difference between that which arises in oneself and another or internally and externally. Although the

wholesome consciousness which arises in oneself is the same as that in another, they differ in continuity and, therefore, they are said to be dissociated by continuity.

*Note:* The dissociation of eye consciousness element from the remaining 6 consciousness elements comes under the dissociation by times.

*States of enquiry:* A total of 250 states, 92 of which belong to internal and 158 to the external states of enquiry, form the subject matter of this chapter.

## The Chart<sup>1</sup>

There are 4 main columns, 2 for association, *i.e.* associated (total) and partially associated and 2 for dissociation, *i.e.* dissociated (total) and partially dissociated.

With regard to partial association, when materiality is the subject of enquiry, there is nothing to insert in this column but in the case  
p. 98 | of mentality, all the associated mental factors are indicated in this column.

With regard to partial dissociation, when materiality is the subject of enquiry, the 52 mental factors that are dissociated are indicated in this column, but in the case of mentality, the 16 subtle physical states and Nibbāna, which are dissociated, are indicated in this column.

## The Form of Question and Answer

This is similar to [Chapter I](#). Here direct questions are asked about the numbers of aggregates, bases and elements which are associated with and dissociated from each state of enquiry.

1. *Association:* When either materiality or Nibbāna is dealt with there are no associated states and the answer invariably is

---

<sup>1</sup>See Method of Chapter VI: *Association and Dissociation* on page 219.

“With none”. Whenever this is the answer there is no partial association.

*Dissociation:* But materiality is dissociated from mentality as stated above and the answer is “from 4 (mental) aggregates, from 1 (mind) base and from 7 (consciousness) elements”. This is obtained by classification of the 4 mental aggregates under aggregates, bases and elements. This is total dissociation.

*Partial Dissociation:* When only part of mentality that comes under cognizable base and under cognizable element are dissociated, it is known as “partial dissociation”. This can be clearly understood from the example. At first it must be remembered that 16 subtle physical states, 52 mental factors and Nibbāna are the total number of states that come under cognizable base and under cognizable element. Now it has been shown that materiality and materiality, materiality and Nibbāna are neither associated nor dissociated. Therefore, with regard to matter aggregate (materiality) the association with or dissociation from the 16 subtle physical states (materiality) and Nibbāna of the cognizable base and cognizable element need not be considered. This leaves only the 52 mental factors of the cognizable base and cognizable element for consideration. Now matter aggregate is dissociated from 52 mental factors since they are mentality. But as the latter forms only a part of cognizable base and cognizable element, matter aggregate is dissociated from a part of cognizable base and cognizable element. Thus the answer here is “partially dissociated from 1 (cognizable) base and from 1 (cognizable) element”.

2. With feeling, perception or mental formation, each of which is mentality they are mutually associated, *i.e.* each is associated with the remaining 3 (mental) aggregates, with 1 (mind) base and with 7 (consciousness) elements. Moreover, since each of them is also associated with the 52 mental factors (mentality) that form part of cognizable base and cognizable element they are partially associated with 1 (cognizable) base and with 1 (cognizable) element. However, when feeling is dealt with,

since feeling is not associated with feeling, it is excluded from the 52 mental factors and only 51 mental factors are partially associated. Similarly with perception, the perception from the 52 mental factors is excluded.

*Dissociation:* Mentality and materiality are dissociated. So feeling, perception or mental formation is dissociated from 1 (matter) aggregate, from 10 (gross) bases and from 10 (gross) elements. Each of them is also dissociated from the 16 subtle physical states and Nibbāna that form part of cognizable base and cognizable element and is therefore partially dissociated from 1 (cognizable) base and from 1 (cognizable) element.

3. *Association:* With consciousness aggregate, this is associated with the remaining 3 mental aggregates. It is not associated with mind base and with 7 consciousness elements because these come under consciousness and consciousness is not associated with consciousness. But it is also associated with the same three mental factors aggregate, *i.e.* the 52 mental factors, under cognizable base and under cognizable element. Thus it is partially associated with 1 (cognizable) base and with 1 (cognizable) element.

*Dissociation:* It is similarly dissociated as feeling aggregate since both are mentality.

4. *Association:* With eye-consciousness, which is one kind of consciousness, this is similarly associated as consciousness aggregate. But it is associated only with the 7 primary mental factors and is therefore partially associated with the cognizable base and cognizable element.

*Dissociation:* Since it is mentality, it is dissociated from 1 (matter) aggregate and from 10 (gross) bases. As regards dissociation from the elements, since eye-consciousness is neither associated with nor dissociated from eye-consciousness, it is excluded from the 7 consciousness elements in dissociation. It is also dissociated from cognizable element as the latter comes under partial dissociation. It must be noted that whenever mentality is the subject of enquiry, the 16 subtle physical states and Nibbāna are always included in the partially dissociated states.

5. *Association:* Origin truth is a part of the mental formation aggregate and, therefore, it is associated with the remaining 3 (mental) aggregates, with 1 (mind) base and with 1 (mind-consciousness) element and also with the remaining 21 states of mental formation aggregate. In the latter case it is partially associated with the mental formation aggregate.  
*Dissociation:* Origin truth is associated with mind-consciousness element which must, therefore, be excluded from the 7 consciousness elements in dissociation. It is also dissociated from cognizable element as the latter comes under partial dissociation. The rest is clear from the Chart.
6. Bodily pleasure faculty is feeling and is, therefore, associated with the aggregates and bases in the same way as feeling aggregate. But since it is pleasurable feeling accompanied with body consciousness, it is associated only with 1 (body consciousness) element. In partial association, it is associated with the 6 primary mental factors, feeling being excluded. In dissociation, body-consciousness element is excluded from the elements. The rest is clear from the Chart.
7. *Association:* Indifference faculty is associated with 55 types of consciousness accompanied by indifferent feeling and not with body consciousness which is, therefore, excluded. Moreover, since it is associated with 46 mental factors (*i.e.* excluding feeling, rapture, hate, envy, stinginess and worry from the 52 mental factors) it is partially associated.  
*Dissociation:* Here body consciousness, which is not associated, is included. The rest is clear from the Chart.
8. Conditioned by 6 bases, Contact is a part of the mental formation aggregate which is associated with the 89 types of consciousness. Thus it is associated with the mental formation aggregate in partial association. The dissociation is the same as the mental aggregates.
9. Fine-material becoming includes both mentality and materiality and, therefore, there is no association. Also there is no dissociation from the aggregates and from the bases. But since nose consciousness, tongue consciousness and body conscious-

ness are absent in this becoming, the materiality and mentality concerned with it are dissociated from these 3 consciousness elements.

p. 101

10. Immaterial becoming consists of the 4 mental aggregates and, therefore, there is no association. But it is dissociated from matter aggregate and from the gross bases. And since this becoming comes under mind-consciousness and cognizable elements, these are excluded in the dissociation from the elements. Partial dissociation is clear from the Chart.
11. *Association*: Road to psychic power consists of mental formation and consciousness aggregates and, therefore, it is associated with the remaining mental aggregates, *i.e.* feeling and perception aggregates. Since consciousness is here included, it is not associated with the base and with the element. And because intention, energy and wisdom mental factors are its constituents, these are excluded and, therefore, it is associated with the remaining 33 mental factors in partial association.  
*Dissociation*: Since it is mentality it is dissociated from materiality and, excluding mind-consciousness and cognizable elements, from the remaining 16 elements. It is also dissociated from the 16 subtle physical states and Nibbāna in partial dissociation.
12. With Jhāna, the 5 factors come under feeling and mental formation aggregate and, therefore, it is associated with perception and consciousness aggregates, with mind base and with mind-consciousness element. In partial association it is also associated with mental formation aggregate and, excluding the 5 *Jhānic* factors, with the remaining 33 mental factors. As for partial dissociation this is clear from the Chart.
13. Decision, which comes under mental formation aggregate, is associated with 78 types of consciousness exclusive of doubt consciousness and 2 x 5 sense-consciousness. Therefore it is associated with the remaining 3 mental aggregates, with mind base and with mind-element and mind-consciousness element but not with the 5 sense-consciousness elements. And, since it is a part of mental formation aggregate, in partial association



it is associated with that aggregate and with 50 mental factors exclusive of doubt with which it is not associated. It is dissociated from 15 elements, *i.e.* the 10 gross elements and the 5 sense-consciousness elements.

14. *Association:* States associated with pleasant feeling comprise the remaining 3 mental aggregates exclusive of feeling aggregate and are, therefore, associated with feeling aggregate. Since consciousness is included, they are definitely not associated with the | base and with the element. In partial association, p. 102 it is associated with 63 kinds of pleasant feeling.

*Dissociation:* The dissociated elements are those that are not associated with the mentality under inquiry. This will be made clear. States associated with pleasant feeling include the 3 elements, body consciousness, mind-consciousness and cognizable elements. But there is only partial dissociation from cognizable element and, therefore, excluding body consciousness and mind consciousness elements, they are dissociated from the remaining elements.

15. With states associated with feeling that is neither painful nor pleasant, the only thing to be noted is that they are partially associated with the 55 kinds of indifferent feeling. As stated in the case of indifference faculty above, these states are dissociated from body consciousness but not from the remaining 6 consciousness elements with which they are associated.
16. Resultant states consist of the 4 mental aggregates and, therefore, there is no association. They are dissociated only from materiality.
17. *Association:* States which are neither resultant nor producing resultant states consist of both the 4 mental aggregates and materiality and, therefore, there is no association.
- Dissociation:* Because materiality is included in these states there is no dissociation from the aggregate and from the base. But with regard to the dissociation from the element since these states consist of inoperative consciousness and materiality, they are dissociated only from the 5 sense consciousness elements.

Again, because materiality is included, there is no partial dissociation.

18. States which are not acquired by clinging and not favourable to clinging consist of both the 4 mental aggregates and Nibbāna and, therefore, as in the above, there is no association and also no dissociation from the aggregate and from the base. But with regard to the dissociation from the element, since these states come under mind-consciousness element, the latter is excluded in dissociation and they are dissociated from the remaining 6 consciousness elements. And because Nibbāna is included, there is no partial dissociation.

19. *Association:* States with applied-thought and sustained-thought consist of the 55 types of consciousness associated with these two thoughts and, excluding them, the 50 mental factors. These belong to the 4 mental aggregates and, therefore, there can be no association. But because applied-thought and sustained-thought, which are part of mental formation aggregate, are not included in these states, the latter is associated with them. Thus there is partial association with mental formation aggregate and with applied-thought and sustained-thought.

p. 103

*Dissociation:* The 5 sense consciousness elements are not associated with applied-thought and sustained-thought and, therefore, they are included in dissociation. There is no difference from the above with regard to partial dissociation.

20. With States without applied-thought but with sustained-thought the latter is excluded and, therefore, as in the above, there is partial association with mental formation aggregate and with sustained-thought. The only difference with regard to dissociation is that mind consciousness element which is associated with these states is excluded.
21. States without applied-thought and sustained-thought consist of the 4 mental aggregates, materiality and Nibbāna and, therefore, there is no association. Also, there is no dissociation from the aggregate and from the base but only from mind element which is not associated with these states. There is no partial dissociation.

22. States which are mental factors consist of the 3 mental factor aggregates and, therefore, they are associated with consciousness aggregate, with mind base and with 7 consciousness elements. Since all the 52 mental factors are included there is no partial association. The aggregates, bases and elements which are materiality, are included in dissociation. As shown in the Chart, the 16 subtle physical states and Nibbāna are included in partial dissociation.

*Note:* The method, as explained above, can be applied to all the remaining states of enquiry of this chapter.

*How to read the Chart*<sup>1</sup>: Matter aggregate and feeling aggregate are taken for illustration.

1. *Matter aggregate:* With how many aggregates, with how many bases and with how many elements is Matter aggregate associated? With none.

From how many is it dissociated? It is dissociated from 4 aggregates (feeling, perception, mental formation and consciousness aggregates), from 1 base (mind base) and from 7 elements (7 consciousness elements); partially dissociated from 1 base (52 mental factors) and from 1 element (52 mental factors).

2. *Feeling aggregate:* With how many aggregates, with how many bases and with how many elements is Feeling aggregate associated? It is associated with 3 aggregates (perception, mental formation and consciousness aggregates) with 1 base (mind base) and with 7 elements (7 consciousness elements). p. 104

From how many is it dissociated? It is dissociated from 1 aggregate (matter aggregate), from 10 bases (10 gross bases) and from 10 elements (10 gross elements); partially dissociated from 1 base (16 subtle physical states and Nibbāna) and from 1 element (16 subtle physical states and Nibbāna).

*The kinds of answers:* There are 22 kinds of answers. Since all the 250 states of enquiry dealt with in this chapter cannot be included in the Chart, only those with a different answer are given. The numbers

---

<sup>1</sup>See Method of Chapter VI: *Association and Dissociation* on page 219.

of the states of enquiry having the same answer are given in brackets along with the questions.

	Question Numbers	States
1.	228 (1), 231 (10), 233 (10), 236 (8), 247 (3), 276 (2), 280 (5), 290 (4)	43
2.	229 (3), 243 (1), 254 (2)	6
3.	230 (1), 232 (1), 237 (1), 241 (1), 255 (1), 291 (1)	6
4.	234 (7)	7
5.	235 (2), 240 (10), 244 (3), 249 (3), 252 (5), 277 (3), 282 (3), 286 (17), 294 (7)	53
6.	238 (4), 248 (3)	7
7.	239 (1)	1
8.	242 (1), 253 (3)	4
9.	245 (1)	1
10.	246 (3), 257 (2), 261 (2), 269 (9), 272 (8), 274 (2), 278 (2), 284 (1), 286 (5), 294 (1), 296 (2), 298 (4), 305 (5)	46
11.	250 (1)	1
12.	251 (1)	1
13.	256 (1)	1
14.	258 (2), 267 (1), 302 (1)	4
15.	259 (1), 268 (1), 303 (1)	3
16.	260 (1), 271 (1), 275 (4), 289 (1)	7
17.	262 (2), 272 (1), 293 (1)	4
18.	263 (2), 270 (2), 281 (1), 283 (2), 286 (10), 287 (2), 295 (2), 296 (2), 304 (3)	26
19.	264 (1), 299 (2)	3
20.	265 (2), 279 (3), 285 (1), 286 (5), 288 (1), 294 (1), 297 (2), 301 (2)	17
21.	266 (1), 310 (2)	3
22.	292 (6)	6
	Total:	250

# VII

## Associated and Dissociated

### 11 Questions and Answers

306. Feeling aggregate is associated with these states; Perception aggregate; Mental formation aggregate; Consciousness aggregate; Mind base is associated with these states. Those states are dissociated from these states. p. 105

From how many aggregates, from how many bases and from how many elements are those states dissociated? They are dissociated from 4 aggregates, from 1 base and from 7 elements; partially dissociated from 1 base and from 1 element (5).

307. Eye consciousness element; ...Mind element; Mind consciousness element is associated with these states. Those states are dissociated from these states.

They are not dissociated from any aggregates, not dissociated from any bases; they are dissociated from 1 element (7).

308. Mind faculty is associated with these states. Those states are dissociated from these states.

They are dissociated from 4 aggregates, from 1 base and from 7 elements; partially dissociated from 1 base and from 1 element (1).

309. Indifference faculty is associated with these states. Those states are dissociated from these states.

They are not dissociated from any aggregates; not dissociated from any bases; they are dissociated from 5 elements (1).

310. Conditioned by formation, Consciousness; Conditioned by

6 bases, Contact; Conditioned by contact, Feeling; Contact; Feeling; Perception; Volition; Consciousness; Attention is associated with these states. Those states are dissociated from these states.

They are dissociated from 4 aggregates, from 1 base and from 7 elements; partially dissociated from 1 base and from 1 element (9).

311. Decision is associated with these states. Those states are dissociated from these states.

They are not dissociated from any aggregates, not dissociated from any bases; they are dissociated from 1 element (1).

312. States associated with feeling that is neither painful nor pleasant; States accompanied by indifference are associated with these states. Those states are dissociated from these states.

p. 106 They are not dissociated from any aggregates, not dissociated from any bases; they are dissociated from 5 elements (2).

313. States with applied-thought and sustained-thought are associated with these states. Those states are dissociated from these states.

They are not dissociated from any aggregates, not dissociated from any bases; they are dissociated from 1 element (1).

314. States which are consciousness; States which are mental factors; States which are associated with consciousness; States which are conjoined with consciousness; States which are both conjoined with and are generated by consciousness; States which are conjoined with, are generated by and arise together with consciousness; States which are conjoined with, are generated by and arise successively with consciousness are associated with these states. Those states are dissociated from these states.

They are dissociated from 4 aggregates, from 1 base and from 7 elements; partially dissociated from 1 base and from 1 element (7).

315. States with applied-thought; States with sustained-thought are associated with these states. Those states are dissociated from these states.

They are not dissociated from any aggregates, not dissociated from any bases; they are dissociated from 1 element (2).

316. States which are accompanied by indifference are associated with these states. Those states are dissociated from these states.

From how many aggregates, from how many bases and from how

many elements are those states dissociated? They are not dissociated from any aggregates, not dissociated from any bases; they are dissociated from 5 elements (1).

## Mnemonic

Four aggregates, one base,  
 Seven elements, two from faculties,  
 Three dependent originations, and then five states with contact as the fifth,  
 Decision, attention, three triplets,  
 Seven greater intermediate couplets, two applied and sustained-thoughts,  
 Associated with mind element, three states accompanied with indifference feeling.

## Explanation of the Method and Chart of Chapter VII

*Subject matter:* 37 states which are either pure consciousness or mental factor form the subject matter of this chapter. Here the states that are associated with the state of enquiry and the states that are dissociated from those associated states are considered. This method can be applied only to p. 107

1. feeling aggregate and others where the mental factors are associated with the 7 consciousness elements,
2. decision and others where the mental factors are associated with mind element and mind consciousness element and
3. states that are pure consciousness aggregate.

It is not applicable to

1. Origin truth, Path truth and others which are associated with a part of mind consciousness element,
2. materiality and
3. Nibbāna.

Out of the 37 states, 24 belong to the internal and 13 to the external states of enquiry.

*“These states” and “those states”*: The rules for determining “these states” and “those states” are as follows:

1. When one of the 4 mental aggregates is the state of enquiry (as in No. 306), the remaining 3 mental aggregates are taken as the first “these states”. Then the aggregate under enquiry together with the 3 associated mental aggregates (“these states”), making up the 4 mental aggregates, are taken as the first “those states”. (This is indicated in the column of “those states” in the Chart as “states + these states” for this has to be done with every state of enquiry. The reason is that both “these states” and the state of enquiry are dissociated in the same way—in this case from materiality and Nibbāna. Moreover, it shows that there is a slight difference between the states taken as the first “these states” and “those states”). Again, “those states”, the 4 mental aggregates, are dissociated from materiality and Nibbāna which are taken as the second “these states” and, later, as the second “those states”. (This is shown in the column of the second “these states” in the Chart). The latter, materiality and Nibbāna are dissociated from the 4 mental aggregates, from mind base and from 7 consciousness elements. They are also dissociated from 52 mental factors of cognizable base and cognizable element in partial dissociation.
2. With eye-consciousness element (No. 307), the associated states, the 7 primary mental factors, are taken as the first “these states”. The eye-consciousness element together with the 7 primary mental factors (also known as the eye-consciousness element mental | grouping, which is the way to briefly denote consciousness and its associated mental factors), the first “those states”, are dissociated from 6 consciousness element mental groupings, materiality and Nibbāna. All the latter states which are taken as the second “these states”, are not dissociated from any aggregate, not dissociated from any base but only dissociated from eye-consciousness element.
3. With decision (No. 311), the associated states, 78 types of con-



sciousness and the 50 mental factors exclusive of decision and doubt, are taken as the first “these states”. Then taking decision with its associated states, which make up 78 types of consciousness and 51 mental factors exclusive of doubt, as the first “those states”, the latter are dissociated from 2 x 5 sense consciousness elements, doubt mental grouping, materiality and Nibbāna which are all taken as the second “these states”. The latter are not dissociated from any aggregate, not dissociated from any base but dissociated only from mind element.

4. States with applied-thought and sustained-thought (No. 313) are associated with these two thoughts which are taken as the first “these states”. The states with applied-thought and sustained-thought together with these two thoughts, which make up 55 types of consciousness with applied-thought and sustained-thought and 52 mental factors, are taken as the first “those states”. The latter are dissociated from without applied-thought and sustained-thought mental groupings, materiality and Nibbāna, which are taken as the second “these states”. The latter are not dissociated from any aggregate, not dissociated from any base but dissociated only from mind element.
5. With indifference faculty (No. 309), which is the feeling associated with the 55 types of consciousness accompanied by indifference, the above mental groupings, exclusive of indifferent feeling are the associated states which are taken as the first “these states”. Indifferent feeling together with the associated mental groupings are taken as the first “those states”. They are dissociated from the bodily pleasure, bodily pain, mental joy and grief mental groupings, materiality and Nibbāna which are taken as the second “these states”. The latter are not dissociated from any aggregates, not dissociated from any bases but dissociated from eye-consciousness, ear consciousness, nose consciousness, tongue consciousness and mind elements.
6. States associated with feeling that is neither painful nor | pleasant (No. 312) are the mental groupings accompanied by indifferent feeling but excludes the latter, which is the associated state. Indifferent feeling together with its mental groupings are taken

as the first “these states” and these are dissociated in the same way as indifference faculty above, *i.e.* from the bodily pleasure, bodily pain, mental joy and grief mental groupings, materiality and Nibbāna which are also dissociated from the 5 elements (the only difference from indifference faculty is in the states taken as the first “these states”. The rest are the same).

*How to read the Chart*<sup>1</sup>: Feeling aggregate is taken as an illustration. Feeling aggregate is associated with these states (89 types of consciousness and 51 mental factors exclusive of feeling).

Those (Feeling and above associated states, *i.e.* 89 types of consciousness and 52 mental factors) are dissociated from these states (materiality and Nibbāna).

From how many aggregates, from how many bases and from how many elements are those states (materiality and Nibbāna) dissociated? They are dissociated from 4 aggregates (mental aggregates), from 1 base (mind base) and from 7 elements (7 consciousness elements); partially dissociated from 1 (cognizable) base (52 mental factors) and from 1 (cognizable) element (52 mental factors).

*The kinds of answers*: There are 3 kinds of answers. The same answer is given by a number of “those states”. The numbers of the states of enquiry which give the same kind are shown in brackets along with the questions.

	Question Numbers	States
1.	306 (5), 308 (1), 310 (9), 314 (7)	22
2.	307 (7), 311 (1), 313 (1), 315 (2)	11
3.	309 (1), 312 (2), 316 (1)	4
	Total:	37

<sup>1</sup>See Method of Chapter VII: *Association and Dissociation* on page 220.

# VIII

## Dissociated and Associated

### 2 Questions and Answers

317. Matter aggregate is dissociated from these states. With how many aggregates, with how many bases and with how many elements are those states associated? With none (1). p. 110

318. Feeling aggregate is dissociated from these states; Perception aggregate; Mental formation aggregate; Consciousness aggregate ... States which are causes of lamentation; States which are not causes of lamentation are dissociated from these states.

With how many aggregates, with how many bases and with how many elements are those states associated? With none (323).

### Mnemonic

Cognizable base, cognizable element, again life faculty, mentality-materiality,  
Six bases, birth, ageing, death, two triplets. Those states are not included,  
Seven states from the first lesser intermediate couplets, ten clusters,  
Again fourteen greater-intermediate couplets, six last couplets,  
These also are not included. All these forty-seven states are not included in this negative Chapter together with [Chapter XIV](#).

## Explanation of the Methods and Charts of Chapters VIII and XIV

*Subject matter:* 324 states which are dissociated by planes, by classes, by times and by continuity form the subject matter of these two chapters. Here the states that are dissociated from the state of enquiry and the states that are associated with the above dissociated states are considered. This method can be applied only to states that are pure materiality, Nibbāna and mental aggregates and to those states which involve both materiality and mentality but are dissociated. Out of the 324 states, 97 belong to the internal and 227 to the external states of enquiry.

All the states of enquiry are not mentioned in [Chapter VIII](#) which has only 2 questions and answers. The reason is that all of them give the same negative answer, *i.e.* “with none”. However, they are mentioned in [Chapter XIV](#) to which reference can be made. | Some of them have been included here so as to show clearly the states that are taken as “these states”.

*Dissociated states:* Suffering truth and supramundane mental groupings are dissociated by planes. The 9 great becomings are taken as “these states” in turns because they are also dissociated by planes. But as explained in [Chapter VI](#), since materiality and materiality are not dissociated, when perceived becoming is the state of enquiry, non-perceived becoming cannot be taken as “these states”. So also with five-aggregate becoming, one-aggregate becoming cannot be taken as “these states”. However, with pure mentality as the state of enquiry such as four-aggregate becoming and neither perception nor non-perception becoming, non-perceived becoming and one-aggregate becoming, which are pure materiality, are respectively taken as “these states”.

“*These states*”: The rules for determining “these states” are as follows:

1. When materiality or Nibbāna is the state of enquiry, the dissociated 4 mental aggregates are taken as “these states” and later

as “those states”. Since the latter have no associated states, the answer is “with none”.

2. With mental factors such as feeling aggregate and so on which are associated with all kinds of consciousness and with 89 types of consciousness such as consciousness aggregate, the dissociated states, materiality and Nibbāna are taken as “these states”.
3. With mental factors such as Origin truth and so on which are not associated with all kinds of consciousness and with one of the 7 consciousness elements such as eye-consciousness element and so on, the dissociated mentality, together with materiality and Nibbāna are taken as “these states”. (Origin truth, which is greed, and hate or delusion are dissociated by class).
4. With rebirth becoming where both materiality and mentality are involved, the dissociated mental states are taken as “these states”.

*How to read the Chart<sup>1</sup> (of chapter VIII):* Matter aggregate is taken as illustration. Matter aggregate is dissociated from these states (4 mental aggregates). With how many aggregates, with how many bases and with how many elements are those states (4 mental aggregates) associated? With none.

*The kinds of answers (of chapter VIII):* They are all the same, i.e. “with none”.

Chapter XIV: Here the states that are dissociated from the state of enquiry as in Chapter VIII are classified and unclassified under the aggregates, bases and elements. The asterisk shows that Nibbāna is not classified under the aggregates. p. 112

*How to read the Chart<sup>2</sup> (of chapter XIV):* Matter aggregate is taken as illustration. Matter aggregate is dissociated from these states (4 mental aggregates).

Under how many aggregates, under how many bases and under how many elements are those states (4 mental aggregates) classified? They are classified under 4 aggregates (feeling, perception, mental

---

<sup>1</sup>See Method of Chapter VIII *Dissociated and Associated* on page 221.

<sup>2</sup>See Method of Chapter XIV *Classified and Unclassified Concerning the Dissociated* on page 221.

formation and consciousness aggregates), under 2 bases (cognizable base and mind base) and under 8 elements (cognizable element and 7 consciousness elements).

Under how many are they (4 mental aggregates) not classified? They are not classified under 1 aggregate (matter aggregate), under 10 bases (10 gross bases) and under 10 elements (10 gross elements).

*The kinds of answers (of chapter XIV):* There are 9 kinds of answers. The numbers of states of enquiry having the same answers are given below:

	Question Numbers	States
1.	456 (1), 458 (20), 462 (8), 470 (4), 478 (4), 487 (2), 491 (10), 469 (6), 500 (2), 510 (10), 503 (2), 505 (5), 507 (2), 509 (2), 516 (3)	81
2.	457 (6), 466 (3), 472 (6), 504 (8)	23
3.	459 (7), 473 (1), 481 (1), 512 (2)	11
4.	460 (1), 475 (1), 480 (1), 486 (5), 490 (2), 495 (3), 497 (1), 499 (4), 501 (20), 502 (4), 507 (4), 508 (5), 511 (4), 515 (3), 518 (5)	63
5.	461 (2), 463 (4), 465 (10), 467 (3), 471 (16), 474 (4), 477 (2), 482 (3), 485 (9), 489 (8), 492 (4), 494 (8), 498 (5), 501 (28), 507 (13), 510 (4), 513 (3), 517 (5)	131
6.	464 (1), 476 (2), 484 (1), 514 (1)	5
7.	468 (3), 479 (1), 483 (1), 506 (1)	6
8.	469 (1)	1
9.	488 (1), 493 (2)	3
	Total:	324

# IX

## Associated and Associated

### 34 Questions and Answers

319. Feeling aggregate is associated with these states; Perception aggregate; Mental formation aggregate is associated with these states. Those states are associated with these states. p. 113

With how many aggregates, with how many bases and with how many elements are those states associated? They are associated with 3 aggregates, with 1 base and with 7 elements; partially associated with 1 base and with 1 element (3).

320. Consciousness aggregate; Mind base; Eye consciousness element ... Mind element; Mind consciousness element is associated with these states. Those states are associated with these states. ... They are associated with 3 aggregates; partially associated with 1 base and with 1 element (9).

321. Origin truth; Path truth is associated with these states. Those states are associated with these states. They are associated with 3 aggregates, with 1 base and with 1 element; partially associated with 1 aggregate, with 1 base and with 1 element (2).

322. Mind faculty is associated with these states. Those states are associated with these states. They are associated with 3 aggregates; partially associated with 1 base and with 1 element (1).

323. Bodily pleasure faculty; Bodily pain faculty; Mental joy faculty; Grief faculty is associated with these states. Those states are associated with these states. They are associated with 3 aggregates,

with 1 base and with 1 element; partially associated with 1 base and with 1 element (4).

324. Indifference faculty is associated with these states. Those states are associated with these states. They are associated with 3 aggregates, with 1 base and with 6 elements; partially associated with 1 base and with 1 element (1).

p. 114 325. Faith faculty; Energy faculty; Mindfulness faculty; Concentration faculty; Wisdom faculty; I-shall-know-what-I-did-not-know faculty; Higher realization faculty; He-who-has-known faculty; Ignorance; Conditioned by ignorance, Formations are associated with these states. Those states are associated with these | states. They are associated with 3 aggregates, with 1 base and with 1 element; partially associated with 1 aggregate, with 1 base and with 1 element (10).

326. Conditioned by formations, Consciousness is associated with these states. Those states are associated with these states. They are associated with 3 aggregates; partially associated with 1 base and with 1 element (1).

327. Conditioned by 6 bases, Contact is associated with these states. Those states are associated with these states. They are associated with 3 aggregates, with 1 base and with 7 elements; partially associated with 1 aggregate, with 1 base and with 1 element (1).

328. Conditioned by contact, Feeling is associated with these states. Those states are associated with these states. They are associated with 3 aggregates, with 1 base and with 7 elements; partially associated with 1 base and with 1 element (1).

329. Conditioned by feeling, Craving; Conditioned by craving, Clinging; Kamma becoming is associated with these states. Those states are associated with these states. They are associated with 3 aggregates, with 1 base and with 1 element; partially associated with 1 aggregate, with 1 base and with 1 element (3).

330. Sorrow; Suffering; Grief is associated with these states. Those states are associated with these states. They are associated with 3 aggregates, with 1 base and with 1 element; partially associated with 1 base and with 1 element (3).

331. Despair; Applications of Mindfulness; Great Effort is associated with these states. Those states are associated with these states.



They are associated with 3 aggregates, with 1 base and with 1 element; partially associated with 1 aggregate, with 1 base and with 1 element (3).

332. Road to psychic power is associated with these states. Those states are associated with these states. They are associated with 2 aggregates; partially associated with 1 aggregate, with 1 base and with 1 element (1).

333. Jhāna is associated with these states. Those states are associated with these states. They are associated with 2 aggregates, with 1 base and with 1 element; partially associated with 1 aggregate, with 1 base and with 1 element (1).

334. Illimitables; 5 Faculties; 5 Strengths; 7 Factors of Enlightenment; Noble Eightfold Path is associated with these states. | Those states are associated with these states. They are associated with 3 aggregates, with 1 base and with 1 element; partially associated with 1 aggregate, with 1 base and with 1 element (5). p. 115

335. Contact; Volition; Attention is associated with these states. Those states are associated with these states. They are associated with 3 aggregates, with 1 base and with 7 elements; partially associated with 1 aggregate, with 1 base and with 1 element (3).

336. Feeling; Perception is associated with these states. Those states are associated with these states. They are associated with 3 aggregates, with 1 base and with 7 elements; partially associated with 1 base and with 1 element (2).

337. Consciousness is associated with these states. Those states are associated with these states. They are associated with 3 aggregates; partially associated with 1 base and with 1 element (1).

338. Decision is associated with these states. Those states are associated with these states. They are associated with 3 aggregates, with 1 base and with 2 elements; partially associated with 1 aggregate, with 1 base and with 1 element (1).

## Triplets

339. States associated with pleasant feeling; States associated with painful feeling; States associated with Feeling that is neither painful nor pleasant are associated with these states. Those states are associated with these states. They are associated with 1 aggregate; partially associated with 1 base and with 1 element (3).

340. States with applied-thought and sustained-thought; States without applied-thought but sustained-thought; States accompanied by rapture are associated with these states. Those states are associated with these states. They are partially associated with 1 aggregate, with 1 base and with 1 element (3).

341. States accompanied by pleasure; States accompanied by indifference are associated with these states. Those states are associated with these states. They are associated with 1 aggregate; partially associated with 1 base and with 1 element (2).

## Couplets

p. 116 342. States which are roots; States which are roots and also have associated roots; States which are roots and also associated with roots are associated with these states. Those states are associated with these states. They are associated with 3 aggregates, | with 1 base and with 1 element; partially associated with 1 aggregate, with 1 base and with 1 element (3).

343. States which have associated roots but are not roots; States which are associated with roots but are not roots; States which are not roots but have associated roots are associated with these states. Those states are associated with these states. They are partially associated with 1 aggregate, with 1 base and with 1 element (3).

344. States which are cankers; States which are both cankers and objects of cankers; States which are both cankers and associated with cankers are associated with these states. Those states are associated with these states. They are associated with 3 aggregates, with 1 base

and with 1 element; partially associated with 1 aggregate, with 1 base and with 1 element (3).

345. States which are associated with cankers but are not cankers are associated with these states. Those states are associated with these states. They are partially associated with 1 aggregate, with 1 base and with 1 element (1).

346. Fetters ...Ties ...Floods ...Bonds ...Hindrances.<sup>1</sup> ...States which are misapprehensions; States which are both misapprehensions and objects of misapprehensions are associated with these states. Those states are associated with these states. They are associated with 3 aggregates, with 1 base and with 1 element, partially associated with 1 aggregate, with 1 base and with 1 element (22).

347. States which are associated with misapprehensions are associated with these states. Those states are associated with these states. They are partially associated with 1 aggregate, with 1 base and with 1 element (1).

348. States which are consciousness are associated with these states. Those states are associated with these states. They are associated with 3 aggregates; partially associated with 1 base and with 1 element (1).

349. States which are mental factors; States which are associated with consciousness; States which are conjoined with consciousness; States which are both conjoined with and generated by consciousness; States which are conjoined with, are generated by and arise together with consciousness; States which are conjoined with, are generated by and arise successively with consciousness are associated with these states. Those states are associated with these states. | They are associated with 1 aggregate, with 1 base and with 7 elements (6).

p. 117

350. States which are clinging ...States which are corruptions; States which are both corruptions and objects of corruptions; States which are both corruptions and corrupt; States which are both corruptions and associated with corruptions are associated with these states. Those states are associated with these states. They are asso-

---

<sup>1</sup>These 5 clusters are to be taken as canker clusters in Nos. 344 and 345.

ciated with 3 aggregates, with 1 base and with 1 element; partially associated with 1 aggregate, with 1 base and with 1 element (8).

351. States which are objects of corruptions but are not corruptions; States which are associated with corruptions but are not corruptions; States with applied-thought; States with sustained-thought; States with rapture; States which are accompanied by rapture are associated with these states. Those states are associated with these states. They are partially associated with 1 aggregate, with 1 base and with 1 element (6).

352. States which are accompanied by pleasure; States which are accompanied by indifference are associated with these states. Those states are associated with these states. With how many aggregates, with how many bases and with how many elements are those states associated? They are associated with 1 aggregate; partially associated with 1 base and with 1 element (2).

## Mnemonic

Four mental aggregates, only mind base,  
 Seven consciousness elements, two Truths, fourteen faculties,  
 Twelve dependent originations, the next sixteen,  
 Eight triplets, forty-three clusters,  
 Seven greater intermediate couplets, six last couplets,  
 These states are mentioned in the ninth chapter.

## Explanation of the Method and Chart of Chapter IX

*Subject matter:* 120 states, each of which is a part of mental aggregate, form the subject matter of these two chapters. These are the states which comply with the 4 characteristics of association. The others, which are Nibbāna, pure materiality or materiality which involves both mentality and Nibbāna are, therefore, excluded. | Of the 120 states, 56 belong to the internal and 64 to the external states of enquiry.

“These states” and “those states”: As was shown in [Chapter VI](#), the remaining mental aggregates which are associated with the state of enquiry are taken as the first “these states”. The latter are then taken as the first “those states”. “Those states” are associated with the state of enquiry which is taken as the second “these states” and, later, as the second “those states”. These are shown in the Chart. The association and partial association with the second “those states” are the same as in [Chapter VI](#).

*How to read the Chart*<sup>1</sup>: Feeling aggregate is taken as illustration. Feeling aggregate is associated with these states (Consciousness 89, mental factors 52 excluding feeling = 51). Those states (consciousness 89, mental factors 52 excluding feeling = 51) are associated with these states (feeling aggregate).

With how many aggregates, with how many bases and with how many elements are those states (feeling aggregate) associated? They (feeling aggregate) are associated with 3 aggregates (remaining 3 mental aggregates), with 1 base (mind base) and with 7 elements (7 consciousness elements); partially associated with 1 (cognizable) base (51 mental factors exclusive of feeling) and with 1 (cognizable) element (51 mental factors exclusive of feeling).

*The kinds of answers*: There are 12 kinds of answers. The numbers of the states of enquiry having the same answers are given below:

	Question Numbers	States
1.	319 (3), 328 (1), 336 (2)	6
2.	320 (9), 322 (1), 326 (1), 337 (1), 348 (1)	13
3.	321 (2), 325 (10), 329 (3), 331 (3), 334 (5), 324 (3), 344 (3), 346 (17), 350 (7)	53
4.	323 (4), 330 (3)	7
5.	324 (1)	1
6.	327 (1), 335 (3)	4
7.	332 (1)	1
8.	333 (1)	1
9.	338 (1)	1

<sup>1</sup>See Method of Chapter IX: *Associated and Associated* on page [222](#).

10.	339 (3), 340 (2), 352 (2)	7
11.	340 (3), 343 (3), 345 (1), 346 (5), 347 (1), 350 (1), 351 (6)	20
12.	349 (6)	6
<hr/>		
	Total:	120

# X

## Dissociated and Dissociated

### 56 Questions and Answers

353. Matter aggregate is dissociated from these states. Those states are dissociated from these states. p. 119

From how many aggregates, from how many bases and from how many elements are those states dissociated? They are dissociated from 4 aggregates, from 1 base and from 7 elements; partially dissociated from 1 base and from 1 element (1).

354. Feeling aggregate is dissociated from these states; Perception aggregate; Mental formation aggregate; Consciousness aggregate; Mind base is dissociated from these states. Those states are dissociated from these states. ... They are dissociated from 1 aggregate, from 10 bases and from 10 elements; partially dissociated from 1 base and from 1 element (5).

355. Eye base ... Tangible Object base; Eye element ... Tangible Object element is dissociated from these states. Those states are dissociated from these states. ... They are dissociated from 4 aggregates, from 1 base and from 7 elements; partially dissociated from 1 base and from 1 element (20).

356. Eye consciousness element ... Mind consciousness element; Origin truth; Path truth is dissociated from these states. Those states are dissociated from these states. They are dissociated from 1 aggre-

gate, from 10 bases and from 16 elements; partially dissociated from 1 base and from 1 element (9).

357. Cessation truth; Eye faculty ... Body faculty; Female faculty; Male faculty is dissociated from these states. Those states are dissociated from these states. They are dissociated from 4 aggregates, from 1 base and from 7 elements; partially dissociated from 1 base and from 1 element (8).

358. Mind faculty is dissociated from these states. Those states are dissociated from these states. They are dissociated from 1 aggregate, from 10 bases and from 10 elements; partially dissociated from 1 base and from 1 element (1).

p. 120 359. Bodily pleasure faculty; Bodily pain faculty; Mental joy faculty; Grief faculty is dissociated from these states. Those states are dissociated from these states. They are dissociated from 1 aggregate, from 10 bases and from 16 elements; partially dissociated from 1 base and from 1 element (4).

360. Indifference faculty is dissociated from these states. Those states are dissociated from these states. They are dissociated from 1 aggregate, from 10 bases and from 11 elements; partially dissociated from 1 base and from 1 element (1).

361. Faith faculty; Energy faculty; Mindfulness faculty; Concentration faculty; Wisdom faculty; I-shall-know-what-I-did-not-know faculty; Higher realization faculty; He-who-has-known faculty; Ignorance; Conditioned by ignorance, Formations are dissociated from these states. Those states are dissociated from these states. They are dissociated from 1 aggregate, from 10 bases and from 16 elements; partially dissociated from 1 base and from 1 element (10).

362. Conditioned by formations, Consciousness; Conditioned by 6 bases, Contact; Conditioned by contact, Feeling is dissociated from these states. Those states are dissociated from these states. They are dissociated from 1 aggregate, from 10 bases and from 10 elements; partially dissociated from 1 base and from 1 element (3).

363. Conditioned by feeling, Craving; Conditioned by craving, Clinging; Kamma becoming is dissociated from these states. Those states are dissociated from these states. They are dissociated from 1



aggregate, from 10 bases and from 16 elements; partially dissociated from 1 base and from 1 element (3).

364. Fine-material becoming is dissociated from these states. Those states are dissociated from these states. They are not dissociated from any aggregates, not dissociated from any bases; they are dissociated from 3 elements (1).

365. Non-percepted becoming; One-aggregate becoming; Lamentation is dissociated from these states. Those states are dissociated from these states. They are dissociated from 4 aggregates, from 1 base and from 7 elements; partially dissociated from 1 base and from 1 element (3).

366. Immaterial becoming; Neither perception nor non-perception becoming; Four-aggregate becoming; Sorrow; Suffering; Grief; Despair; Application of Mindfulness; Great Effort; Road to psychic power; Jhāna; Illimitables; 5 Faculties; 5 Strengths; 7 Factors of Enlightenment; Noble Eightfold Path is dissociated from these states. Those states are dissociated from these states. They are dissociated from 1 aggregate, from 10 bases and from 16 | elements; partially dissociated from 1 base and from 1 element (16). p. 121

367. Contact; Feeling; Perception; Volition; Consciousness; Attention is dissociated from these states. Those states are dissociated from these states. They are dissociated from 1 aggregate, from 10 bases and from 10 elements; partially dissociated from 1 base and from 1 element (6).

368. Decision is dissociated from these states. Those states are dissociated from these states. They are dissociated from 1 aggregate, from 10 bases and from 15 elements; partially dissociated from 1 base and from 1 element (1).

## Triplets

369. Wholesome states; Unwholesome states are dissociated from these states. Those states are dissociated from these states. They are dissociated from 1 aggregate, from 10 bases and from 16 elements; partially dissociated from 1 base and from 1 element (2).

370. States associated with pleasant feeling; States associated with painful feeling are dissociated from these states. Those states are dissociated from these states. They are dissociated from 1 aggregate, from 10 bases and from 15 elements; partially dissociated from 1 base and from 1 element (2).

371. States associated with feeling that is neither painful nor pleasant are dissociated from these states. Those states are dissociated from these states. They are dissociated from 1 aggregate, from 10 bases and from 11 elements; partially dissociated from 1 base and from 1 element (1).

372. Resultant states are dissociated from these states. Those states are dissociated from these states. They are dissociated from 1 aggregate, from 10 bases and from 10 elements; partially dissociated from 1 base and from 1 element (1).

373. States producing resultant states; Corrupt and corrupting states are dissociated from these states. Those states are dissociated from these states. They are dissociated from 1 aggregate, from 10 bases and from 16 elements; partially dissociated from 1 base and from 1 element (2).

p. 122 374. States which are neither resultant nor producing resultant states; States which are not acquired by clinging but favourable to clinging are dissociated from these states. Those states are dissociated from these states. They are not dissociated from any aggregates, not dissociated from any bases; they are dissociated from 5 elements (2).

375. States which are not acquired by clinging and not favourable to clinging; Not corrupt and corrupting states are dissociated from these states. Those states are dissociated from these states. They are not dissociated from any aggregates, not dissociated from any bases; they are dissociated from 6 elements (2).

376. States with applied-thought and sustained-thought are dissociated from these states. Those states are dissociated from these states. They are dissociated from 1 aggregate, from 10 bases and from 15 elements; partially dissociated from 1 base and from 1 element (1).

377. States without applied-thought but with sustained-thought; States accompanied by rapture are dissociated from these states. Those states are dissociated from these states. They are dissociated

from 1 aggregate, from 10 bases and from 16 elements; partially dissociated from 1 base and from 1 element (2).

378. States without applied-thought and sustained-thought are dissociated from these states. Those states are dissociated from these states. They are not dissociated from any aggregates, not dissociated from any bases; they are dissociated from 1 element (1).

379. States accompanied by pleasure are dissociated from these states. Those states are dissociated from these states. They are dissociated from 1 aggregate, from 10 bases and from 15 elements; partially dissociated from 1 base and from 1 element (1).

380. States accompanied by indifference are dissociated from these states. Those states are dissociated from these states. They are dissociated from 1 aggregate, from 10 bases and from 11 elements; partially dissociated from 1 base and from 1 element (1).

381. States eradicated by First Path; States eradicated by Higher 3 Paths; States together with roots eradicated by First Path; States together with roots eradicated by Higher 3 Paths; States leading to rebirth and death; States leading to Nibbāna; States appertaining to Learners; States appertaining to Arahatta; Lofty states are dissociated from these states. Those states are dissociated from these states. They are dissociated from 1 aggregate, from 10 bases and from 16 elements; partially dissociated from 1 base and from 1 element (9).

382. Incomparable states; Exalted states are dissociated from these states. Those states are dissociated from these states. They are not dissociated from any aggregates, not dissociated from any bases; they are dissociated from 6 elements (2). p. 123

383. States with limited objects are dissociated from these states. Those states are dissociated from these states. They are dissociated from 1 aggregate, from 10 bases and from 10 elements; partially dissociated from 1 base and from 1 element (1).

384. States with lofty objects; States with incomparable objects; Low states; States with fixed destiny due to wrong views; States with fixed destiny due to right views; States with Path objects; States conditioned by the Path; States dominated by the Path are dissociated from these states. Those states are dissociated from these states. They are

dissociated from 1 aggregate, from 10 bases and from 16 elements; partially dissociated from 1 base and from 1 element (8).

385. States not arisen are dissociated from these states. Those states are dissociated from these states. They are not dissociated from any aggregates, not dissociated from any bases; they are dissociated from 5 elements (1).

386. States with past objects; States with future objects are dissociated from these states. Those states are dissociated from these states. They are dissociated from 1 aggregate, from 10 bases and from 16 elements; partially dissociated from 1 base and from 1 element (2).

387. States with present objects; States with internal objects; States with external objects; States with internal and external objects are dissociated from these states. Those states are dissociated from these states. They are dissociated from 1 aggregate, from 10 bases and from 10 elements; partially dissociated from 1 base and from 1 element (4).

388. States both visible and impinging; States invisible but impinging are dissociated from these states. Those states are dissociated from these states. They are dissociated from 4 aggregates, from 1 base and from 7 elements; partially dissociated from 1 base and from 1 element (2).

## Couplets

p. 124 389. States which are roots; States which have associated roots; States which are associated with roots; States which are roots and also have associated roots; States which have associated roots but are not roots; States which are roots and also associated with | roots; States which are associated with roots but are not roots; States which are not roots but have associated roots are dissociated from these states. Those states are dissociated from these states. They are dissociated from 1 aggregate, from 10 bases and from 16 elements; partially dissociated from 1 base and from 1 element (5).

390. States not arising from 4 causes; States not conditioned by 4 causes; States with visibility; States with impinging; States which

have physical change are dissociated from these states. Those states are dissociated from these states. They are dissociated from 4 aggregates, from 1 base and from 7 elements; partially dissociated from 1 base and from 1 element (5).

391. States which are Supramundane are dissociated from these states. Those states are dissociated from these states. They are not dissociated from any aggregates, not dissociated from any bases; they are dissociated from 6 elements (1).

392. States which are cankers; States which are associated with cankers; States which are both cankers and objects of cankers; States which are both cankers and associated with cankers; States which are associated with cankers but are not cankers are dissociated from these states. Those states are dissociated from these states. They are dissociated from 1 aggregate, from 10 bases and from 16 elements; partially dissociated from 1 base and from 1 element (5).

393. States which are not objects of cankers; States which are dissociated from cankers and are not objects of cankers are dissociated from these states. Those states are dissociated from these states. They are not dissociated from any aggregates, not dissociated from any bases; they are dissociated from 6 elements (2).

394. States which are fetters ...States which are ties ...States which are floods ...States which are bonds ...States which are hindrances<sup>1</sup> ...States which are misapprehensions; States which are associated with misapprehensions; States which are both misapprehensions and objects of misapprehensions are dissociated from these states. Those states are dissociated from these states. They are dissociated from 1 aggregate, from 10 bases and from 16 elements; partially dissociated from 1 base and from 1 element (38).

395. States which are not objects of misapprehensions; States which are dissociated from misapprehensions and are not objects of misapprehensions are dissociated from these states. Those states are dissociated from these states. They are not dissociated | from any aggregates, not dissociated from any bases; they are dissociated from 6 elements (2).

p. 125

---

<sup>1</sup>These should be taken just as cankers above.

396. States which have objects; States which are consciousness; States which are mental factors; States which are associated with consciousness; States which are conjoined with consciousness; States which are both conjoined with and are generated by consciousness; States which are conjoined with, are generated by and arise together with consciousness; States which are conjoined with, are generated by and arise successively with consciousness are dissociated from these states. Those states are dissociated from these states. They are dissociated from 1 aggregate, from 10 bases and from 10 elements; partially dissociated from 1 base and from 1 element (8).

397. States which have no objects; States which are dissociated from consciousness; States which are not conjoined with consciousness; States which are derived are dissociated from these states. Those states are dissociated from these states. They are dissociated from 4 aggregates, from 1 base and from 7 elements; partially dissociated from 1 base and from 1 element (4).

398. States which are not acquired by clinging are dissociated from these states. Those states are dissociated from these states. They are not dissociated from any aggregates, not dissociated from any bases; they are dissociated from 5 elements (1).

399. States which are clinging ... States which are corruptions; States which are corrupt; States which are associated with corruptions; States which are both corruptions and objects of corruptions; States which are both corruptions and corrupt; States which are corrupt but are not corruptions; States which are both corruptions and associated with corruptions; States which are associated with corruptions but are not corruptions are dissociated from these states. Those states are dissociated from these states. They are dissociated from 1 aggregate, from 10 bases and from 16 elements; partially dissociated from 1 base and from 1 element (15).

400. States which are not objects of corruptions; States which are dissociated from corruptions and are not objects of corruptions are dissociated from these states. Those states are dissociated from these states. They are not dissociated from any aggregates, not dissociated from any bases; they are dissociated from 6 elements (2).

401. States eradicated by First Path; States eradicated by Higher

3 Paths; States together with roots eradicated by First Path; | States together with roots eradicated by Higher 3 Paths are dissociated from these states. Those states are dissociated from these states. They are dissociated from 1 aggregate, from 10 bases and from 16 elements; partially dissociated from 1 base and from 1 element (4). p. 126

402. States with applied-thought; States with sustained-thought are dissociated from these states. Those states are dissociated from these states. They are dissociated from 1 aggregate, from 10 bases and from 15 elements; partially dissociated from 1 base and from 1 element (2).

403. States without applied-thought; States without sustained-thought are dissociated from these states. Those states are dissociated from these states. They are not dissociated from any aggregates, not dissociated from any bases; they are dissociated from 1 element (2).

404. States with rapture; States which are accompanied by rapture are dissociated from these states. Those states are dissociated from these states. They are dissociated from 1 aggregate, from 10 bases and from 16 elements; partially dissociated from 1 base and from 1 element (2).

405. States which are accompanied by pleasure are dissociated from these states. Those states are dissociated from these states. They are dissociated from 1 aggregate, from 10 bases and from 15 elements; partially dissociated from 1 base and from 1 element (1).

406. States which are accompanied by indifference are dissociated from these states. Those states are dissociated from these states. They are dissociated from 1 aggregate, from 10 bases and from 11 elements; partially dissociated from 1 base, and from 1 element (1).

407. States which do not belong to the sensuous plane; States which are not included in the round of existences; States which are not with beyond are dissociated from these states. Those states are dissociated from these states. They are not dissociated from any aggregates, not dissociated from any bases; they are dissociated from 6 elements (3).

408. States which belong to the fine-material plane; States which belong to the immaterial plane; States which lead out from the round

of existences; States which have fixed destiny yielded after decease or after their own occurrence; States which are causes of lamentation are dissociated from these states. Those states are dissociated from these states.

p. 127 From how many aggregates, from how many bases and from how many elements are those states dissociated? They are dissociated from 1 aggregate, from 10 bases and from 10 elements; partially dissociated from 1 base and from 1 element (5).

## Mnemonic

Same as [Chapter VI](#).

## Explanation of the Method and Chart of Chapter X

*Subject matter:* The 250 dissociated states such as matter aggregate and so on dealt with in [Chapter VI](#) also form the subject matter of this chapter.

*“These states” and “Those states”:* The states which are dissociated from the state of enquiry are taken as the first “these states” and then as the first “those states”. Then the states which are dissociated from the first “those states” are taken as the second “these states” and “those states”. The dissociation and partial dissociation from aggregates, bases and elements of the latter states are then found.

*How to read the Chart<sup>1</sup>:* Matter aggregate is taken as illustration. Matter aggregate is dissociated from these states (4 mental aggregates). Those states (4 mental aggregates) are dissociated from these states (matter 28, Nibbāna).

From how many aggregates, from how many bases and from how many elements are those states (matter 28, Nibbāna) dissociated? They are dissociated from 4 aggregates (4 mental aggregates), from 1 base (mind base) and from 7 elements (7 consciousness elements).

---

<sup>1</sup>See Method of Chapter X: *Dissociated and Dissociated* on page 223.



*Note:* In the commentary on this chapter it is stated that Nibbāna is similar to subtle matter (*Nibbānaṃ pana sukhumarūpa-gatika meva*). Some have misinterpreted this as meaning that Nibbāna is as subtle as subtle matter. The commentator did not mean that it should be taken as such. What he wanted to point out was that since both Nibbāna and the 16 subtle physical states are classified under cognizable base and cognizable element, they are alike in this respect.

In the subcommentary, it is stated that the characteristics of Nibbāna and subtle matter are not shown but that Nibbāna is to be taken in partial dissociation and, therefore, that they are alike in this respect.

*The kinds of answers:* There are 9 kinds of answers. The numbers of the states of enquiry having the same answers are given below: p. 128

	Question Numbers	States
1.	353 (1), 355 (20), 357 (8), 365 (3), 388 (2), 390 (5), 397 (4)	43
2.	354 (5), 358 (1), 362 (3), 367 (6), 372 (1), 383 (1), 387 (4), 396 (8)	29
3.	356 (9), 359 (4), 361 (10), 363 (3), 366 (16), 369 (2), 373 (2), 377 (2), 381 (9), 384 (8), 386 (2), 389 (8), 392 (5), 394 (28), 399 (13), 401 (4), 404 (2), 408 (5)	132
4.	360 (1), 371 (1), 380 (1), 406 (1)	4
5.	364 (1)	1
6.	368 (1), 370 (2), 376 (1), 379 (1), 402 (2), 405 (1)	8
7.	374 (2), 385 (1), 398 (1)	4
8.	375 (2), 382 (2), 391 (1), 393 (2), 394 (10), 395 (2), 399 (2), 400 (2), 407 (3)	26
9.	378 (1), 403 (2)	3
	Total:	250



# XI

## Associated with, and Dissociated from, the Classified

### 8 Questions and Answers

409. Origin truth is classified with these states; Path truth is classified with these states under the same aggregate, under the same base and under the same element. p. 129

With how many aggregates, with how many bases and with how many elements are those states associated? They are associated with 3 aggregates, with 1 base and with 7 elements; partially associated with 1 aggregate, with 1 base and with 1 element.

From how many are those states dissociated? They are dissociated from 1 aggregate, from 10 bases and from 10 elements; partially dissociated from 1 base and from 1 element (2).

410. Female faculty; Male faculty is classified with these states under the same aggregate, under the same base and under the same element.

With how many aggregates, with how many bases and with how many elements are those states associated? With none.

From how many are those states dissociated? They are dissociated from 4 aggregates, from 1 base and from 7 elements; partially dissociated from 1 base and from 1 element (2).

411. Bodily pleasure faculty; Bodily pain faculty; Mental joy faculty; Grief faculty is classified with these states under the same aggregate, under the same base and under the same element. ... They are associated with 3 aggregates, with 1 base and with 7 elements; partially associated with 1 base and with 1 element.

From how many are those states dissociated? They are dissociated from 1 aggregate, from 10 bases and from 10 elements; partially dissociated from 1 base and from 1 element (4).

412. Indifference faculty is classified with these states under the same aggregate, under the same base and under the same element. They are associated with 3 aggregates, with 1 base and with 2 elements; partially associated with 1 base and with 1 element.

From how many are those states dissociated? They are dissociated from 1 aggregate, from 10 bases and from 15 elements; partially dissociated from 1 base and from 1 element (1).

p. 130

413. Faith faulty; Energy faculty; Mindfulness faculty; Concentration faculty; Wisdom faculty; I-shall-know-what-I-did-not-know faculty; Higher realization faculty; He-who-has-known faculty; Ignorance; Conditioned by ignorance, Formations; Conditioned by 6 bases, Contact; Conditioned by feeling, Craving; Conditioned by craving, Clinging; Kamma becoming is classified with these states under the same aggregate, under the same base and under the same element. They are associated with 3 aggregates, with 1 base and with 7 elements; partially associated with 1 aggregate, with 1 base and with 1 element.

From how many are those states dissociated? They are dissociated from 1 aggregate, from 10 bases and from 10 elements; partially dissociated from 1 base and from 1 element (14).

414. Lamentation is classified with these states under the same aggregate, under the same base and under the same element.

With how many aggregates, with how many bases and with how many elements are those states associated? With none.

From how many are those states dissociated? They are dissociated from 4 aggregates, from 1 base and from 7 elements; partially dissociated from 1 base and from 1 element (1).

415. Sorrow; Suffering; Grief is classified with these states under the same aggregate, under the same base and under the same element.

They are associated with 3 aggregates, with 1 base and with 7 elements; partially associated with 1 base and with 1 element.

From how many are those states dissociated? They are dissociated from 1 aggregate, from 10 bases and from 10 elements; partially dissociated from 1 base and from 1 element (3).

416. Despair; Application of Mindfulness; Great Effort; Illimitables; 5 Faculties; 5 Strengths; 7 Factors of Enlightenment; Noble Eight-fold Path; Contact; Volition; Decision; Attention; States which are roots; States which are roots and also have associated roots; States which are roots and also associated with roots; States which are cankers; States which are both cankers and objects of cankers; States which are both cankers and associated with cankers; States which are fetters ...States which are ties ...States which are floods ...States which are bonds ...States which are hindrances ...States which are misapprehensions ...States which are clinging ...States which are corruptions; States which are both corruptions and objects of corruptions; States which are | both corruptions and corrupt; States which are both corruptions and associated with corruptions are classified with these states under the same aggregate, under the same base and under the same element.

p. 131

With how many aggregates, with how many bases and with how many elements are those states associated? They are associated with 3 aggregates, with 1 base and with 7 elements; partially associated with 1 aggregate, with 1 base and with 1 element.

From how many are those states dissociated? They are dissociated from 1 aggregate, from 10 bases and from 10 elements; partially dissociated from 1 base and from 1 element (42).

## Mnemonic

Same as [Chapter IV](#).

## Explanation of the Method and Chart of Chapter XI

*Subject matter:* Here feeling, mental formation aggregate, subtle matter and one kind of audible object, which are classified with the states of enquiry under the same aggregate, under the same base and under the same element as given in [Chapter IV](#), are now treated under association and dissociation as in [Chapter VI](#).

*How to read the Chart*<sup>1</sup>: Origin truth is taken as illustration. Origin truth is classified with these states (remaining 49 states of mental formation aggregate) under the same aggregate (mental formation aggregate), under the same base (cognizable base) and under the same element (cognizable element).

With how many aggregates, with how many bases and with how many elements are those states (remaining 49 states of mental formation aggregate) associated? They are associated with 3 aggregates (remaining 3 mental aggregates), with 1 base (mind base) and with 7 elements (7 consciousness elements); partially associated with 1 aggregate (mental formation aggregate), with 1 (cognizable) base (Origin truth, feeling and perception mental factors) and with 1 (cognizable) element (Origin truth, feeling and perception mental factors).

p. 132 From how many are those states (remaining 49 states of mental formation aggregate) dissociated? They are dissociated from 1 aggregate (matter aggregate), from 10 bases (10 gross bases) and from 10 elements (10 gross elements); partially dissociated from 1 (cognizable) base (subtle matter 16 and Nibbāna) and from 1 (cognizable) element (subtle matter 16 and Nibbāna).

*The same kinds of answers:* There are 4 kinds of answers. The numbers of the states of enquiry having the same answers are given below:

	Question Number	States
1.	409 (2), 413 (14), 416 (42)	58

---

<sup>1</sup>See Method of Chapter XI: *Classified in the Association and Dissociation* on page [224](#).

2.	410 (2), 414 (1)	3
3.	411 (4), 415 (3)	7
4.	412 (1)	1
<hr/>		
	Total:	69





# XII

## Classified and Unclassified Concerning the Associated

### 31 Questions and Answers

417. Feeling aggregate is associated with these states; Perception aggregate; Mental formation aggregate is associated with these states. p. 133

Under how many aggregates, under how many bases and under how many elements are those states classified? They are classified under 3 aggregates, under 2 bases and under 8 elements.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not classified under 2 aggregates, under 10 bases and under 10 elements (3).

418. Consciousness aggregate; Mind base; Eye consciousness element ... Mind element; Mind consciousness element is associated with these states. ... They are classified under 3 aggregates, under 1 base and under 1 element.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not classified under 2 aggregates, under 11 bases and under 17 elements (9).

419. Origin truth; Path truth is associated with these states. They are classified under 4 aggregates, under 2 bases and under 2 elements.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not classified under 1 aggregate, under 10 bases and under 16 elements (2).

420. Mind faculty is associated with these states. They are classified under 3 aggregates, under 1 base and under 1 element.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not classified under 2 aggregates, under 11 bases and under 17 elements (1).

421. Bodily pleasure faculty; Bodily pain faculty; Mental joy faculty; Grief faculty is associated with these states. They are classified under 3 aggregates, under 2 bases and under 2 elements.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not classified under 2 aggregates, under 10 bases and under 16 elements (4).

422. Indifference faculty is associated with these states. They are classified under 3 aggregates, under 2 bases and under 7 elements.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not classified under 2 aggregates, under 10 bases and under 11 elements (1).

p. 134 423. Faith faculty; Energy faculty; Mindfulness faculty; Concentration faculty; Wisdom faculty; I-shall-know-what-I-did-not-know faculty; Higher realization faculty; He-who-has-known | faculty; Ignorance; Conditioned by ignorance, Formations are associated with these states. They are classified under 4 aggregates, under 2 bases and under 2 elements.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not classified under 1 aggregate, under 10 bases and under 16 elements (10).

424. Conditioned by formations, Consciousness is associated with these states. They are classified under 3 aggregates, under 1 base and under 1 element.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not classified under 2 aggregates, under 11 bases and under 17 elements (1).

425. Conditioned by 6 bases, Contact is associated with these states. They are classified under 4 aggregates, under 2 bases and under 8 elements.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not classified under 1 aggregate, under 10 bases and under 10 elements (1).

426. Conditioned by contact, Feeling is associated with these states. They are classified under 3 aggregates, under 2 bases and under 8 elements.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not classified under 2 aggregates, under 10 bases and under 10 elements (1).

427. Conditioned by feeling, Craving; Conditioned by craving,

Clinging; Kamma becoming is associated with these states. They are classified under 4 aggregates, under 2 bases and under 2 elements.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not classified under 1 aggregate, under 10 bases and under 16 elements (3).

428. Sorrow; Suffering; Grief is associated with these states. They are classified under 3 aggregates, under 2 bases and under 2 elements.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not classified under 2 aggregates, under 10 bases and under 16 elements (3).

429. Despair; Application of mindfulness; Great effort is associated with these states. They are classified under 4 aggregates, under 2 bases and under 2 elements.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not classified under 1 aggregate, under 10 bases and under 16 elements (3).

430. Road to psychic power is associated with these states. They are classified under 3 aggregates, under 1 base and under 1 element.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not classified under 2 aggregates, under 11 bases and under 17 elements (1).

431. Jhāna is associated with these states. They are classified under 3 aggregates, under 2 bases and under 2 elements. p. 135

Under how many are they not classified? They are not classified under 2 aggregates, under 10 bases and under 16 elements (1).

432. Illimitables; 5 Faculties; 5 Strengths; 7 Factors of Enlightenment; Noble Eightfold Path is associated with these states. They are classified under 4 aggregates, under 2 bases and under 2 elements.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not classified under 1 aggregate, under 10 bases and under 16 elements (5).

433. Contact; Volition; Attention is associated with these states. They are classified under 4 aggregates, under 2 bases and under 8 elements.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not classified under 1 aggregate, under 10 bases and under 10 elements (3).

434. Feeling; Perception is associated with these states. They are classified under 3 aggregates, under 2 bases and under 8 elements.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not classified under 2 aggregates, under 10 bases and under 10 elements (2).

435. Consciousness is associated with these states. They are classified under 3 aggregates, under 1 base and under 1 element.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not classified under 2 aggregates, under 11 bases and under 17 elements (1).

436. Decision is associated with these states. They are classified under 4 aggregates, under 2 bases and under 3 elements.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not classified under 1 aggregate, under 10 bases and under 15 elements (1).

## Triplets

437. States associated with pleasant feeling; States associated with painful feeling; States associated with feeling that is neither painful nor pleasant; States with applied-thought and sustained-thought; States without applied-thought but with sustained-thought; States accompanied by rapture; States accompanied by pleasure; States accompanied by indifference are associated with these states. They are classified under 1 aggregate, under 1 base and under 1 element.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not classified under 4 aggregates, under 11 bases and under 17 elements (8).

## Couplets

p. 136

438. States which are roots; States which are roots and also have associated roots; States which are roots and also associated with roots are associated with these states. They are classified under 4 aggregates, under 2 bases and under 2 elements.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not classified under 1 aggregate, under 10 bases and under 16 elements (3).

439. States which have associated roots but are not roots; States which are associated with roots but are not roots; States which are not roots but have associated roots are associated with these states. They are classified under 1 aggregate, under 1 base and under 1 element.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not classified under 4 aggregates, under 11 bases and under 17 elements (3).

440. States which are cankers; States which are both cankers and objects of cankers; States which are both cankers and associated with cankers are associated with these states. They are classified under 4 aggregates, under 2 bases and under 2 elements.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not classified under 1 aggregate, under 10 bases and under 16 elements (3).

441. States which are associated with cankers but are not cankers are associated with these states. They are classified under 1 aggregate, under 1 base and under 1 element.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not classified under 4 aggregates, under 11 bases and under 17 elements (1).

442. States which are fetters ... States which are ties ... States which are floods ... States which are bonds ... States which are hindrances<sup>1</sup> ... States which are misapprehensions; States which are both misapprehensions and objects of misapprehensions are associated with these states. They are classified under 4 aggregates, under 2 bases and under 2 elements.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not classified under 1 aggregate, under 10 bases and under 16 elements (22).

443. States which are associated with misapprehensions are associated with these states. They are classified under 1 aggregate, under 1 base and under 1 element.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not classified under 4 aggregates, under 11 bases and under 17 elements (1).

444. States which are consciousness are associated with these | p. 137  
states. They are classified under 3 aggregates, under 1 base and under 1 element.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not classified under 2 aggregates, under 11 bases and under 17 elements (1).

445. States which are mental factors; States which are associated with consciousness; States which are conjoined with consciousness; States which are both conjoined with and are generated by consciousness; States which are conjoined with, are generated by and arise together with consciousness; States which are conjoined with, are gen-

---

<sup>1</sup>These should be taken just as cankers above.

erated by and arise successively with consciousness are associated with these states. They are classified under 1 aggregate, under 1 base and under 7 elements.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not classified under 4 aggregates, under 11 bases and under 11 elements (6).

446. States which are clinging ... States which are corruptions; States which are both corruptions and objects of corruptions; States which are both corruptions and corrupt; States which are both corruptions and associated with corruptions are associated with these states. They are classified under 4 aggregates, under 2 bases and under 2 elements.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not classified under 1 aggregate, under 10 bases and under 16 elements (8).

447. States which are corrupt but are not corruptions; States which are associated with corruptions but are not corruptions; States with applied-thought; States with sustained-thought; States with rapture; States which are accompanied by rapture; States which are accompanied by pleasure; States which are accompanied by indifference are associated with these states.

Under how many aggregates, under how many bases and under how many elements are those states classified? They are classified under 1 aggregate, under 1 base and under 1 element.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not classified under 4 aggregates, under 11 bases and under 17 elements (8).

## Mnemonic

Same as [Chapter IX](#).

## Explanation of the Method and Chart

p. 138 Here the states that are associated with the state of enquiry as in [Chapter IX](#) are classified and unclassified under the aggregates, | bases and elements. The asterisk indicates the associated states that are to be classified and unclassified. Only the classified are shown in

the Chart and the remaining aggregates, bases and elements are those that are unclassified.

*How to read the Chart*<sup>1</sup>: Feeling aggregate is taken as illustration. Feeling aggregate is associated with these states (consciousness 89, mental factors 52 excluding feeling = 51).

Under how many aggregates, under how many bases and under how many elements are those states (consciousness 89, mental factors 52 excluding feeling = 51) classified? They (consciousness 89, mental factors 52 excluding feeling = 51) are classified under 3 aggregates (perception, mental formation and consciousness aggregates), under 2 bases (cognizable base and mind base) and under 8 elements (cognizable element and 7 consciousness elements).

Under how many are they (consciousness 89, mental factors 52 excluding feeling = 51) not classified? They are not classified under 2 aggregates (matter aggregate and feeling aggregate), under 10 bases (10 gross bases) and under 10 elements (10 gross elements).

*The kinds of answers*: There are 9 kinds of answers. The numbers of the states of enquiry having the same answers are shown below:

	Question Numbers	States
1.	417 (3), 426 (1), 434 (2)	6
2.	418 (9), 420 (1), 424 (1), 430 (1), 435 (1), 444 (1)	14
3.	419 (2), 423 (10), 427 (3), 429 (3), 432 (5), 438 (3), 440 (3), 442 (17), 446 (7)	53
4.	421 (4), 428 (3), 431 (1)	8
5.	422 (1)	1
6.	425 (1), 433 (3)	4
7.	436 (1)	1
8.	437 (8), 439 (3), 441 (1), 442 (5), 443 (1), 446 (1), 447 (8)	27
9.	445 (6)	6
	Total:	120

<sup>1</sup>See Method of Chapter XII: *Classified and Unclassified in the Associated* on page 222.





# XIII

## Associated with, and Dissociated from, the Unclassified

### 8 Questions and Answers

448. Matter aggregate is not classified with these states under the same aggregate, under the same base and under the same element. With how many aggregates, with how many bases and with how many elements are those states associated? They are associated with 3 aggregates; partially associated with 1 base and with 1 element. p. 139

From how many are they dissociated? They are dissociated from 1 aggregate, from 10 bases and from 10 elements; partially dissociated from 1 base and from 1 element (1).

449. Cognizable base is not classified with these states; Cognizable element; Female faculty; Male faculty; Life faculty; Conditioned by consciousness, Mentality-materiality; Non-perceived becoming; One-aggregate becoming; Birth; Ageing; Death is not classified with these states under the same aggregate, under the same base and under the same element ... They are associated with 3 aggregates; partially associated with 1 base and with 1 element.

From how many are they dissociated? They are dissociated from 1 aggregate, from 10 bases and from 10 elements; partially dissociated from 1 base and from 1 element (11).

450. Immaterial becoming; Neither perception nor non-perception becoming; Four-aggregate becoming; Road to psychic power is not classified with these states under the same aggregate, under the same base and under the same element.

With how many aggregates, with how many bases and with how many elements are those states associated? With none.

From how many are they dissociated? They are dissociated from 4 aggregates, from 1 base and from 7 elements; partially dissociated from 1 base and from 1 element (4).

## Triplets

p. 140 451. Wholesome states; Unwholesome states; States associated with pleasant feeling; States associated with painful feeling; States associated with feeling that is neither painful nor pleasant; Resultant states; States producing resultant states; States which are not acquired by clinging and not favourable to clinging; Corrupt and corrupting states; Not corrupt and not corrupting states; States with applied-thought and sustained-thought; States without applied-thought but with sustained-thought; States accompanied by rapture; States accompanied by pleasure; States accompanied by indifference; States eradicated by First Path; States eradicated by Higher 3 Paths; States together with roots eradicated by First Path; States together with roots eradicated by Higher 3 Paths; States leading to rebirth and death; States leading to Nibbāna; States appertaining to Learners; States appertaining to Arahatta; Lofty states; Incomparable states; States with limited objects; States with lofty objects; States with incomparable objects; Low states; Exalted states; States with fixed destiny due to wrong views; States with fixed destiny due to right views; States with Path object; States conditioned by the Path; States dominated by the Path; States with past object; States with future object; States with present object; States with internal object; States with external object; States with internal and external object (41).

## Couplets

States which have associated roots; States which are associated with roots; States which have associated roots but are not roots; States which are associated with roots but are not roots; States which are not roots but have associated roots are not classified with these states under the same aggregate, under the same base and under the same element.

With how many aggregates, with how many bases and with how many elements are those states associated? With none.

From how many are they dissociated? They are dissociated from 4 aggregates, from 1 base and from 7 elements; partially dissociated from 1 base and from 1 element (5).

452. States which have physical change are not classified with these states under the same aggregate, under the same base and under the same element. They are associated with 3 aggregates; partially associated with 1 base and with 1 element.

From how many are they dissociated? They are dissociated from 1 aggregate, from 10 bases and from 10 elements; partially dissociated from 1 base and from 1 element (1).

453. States which have no physical change; States which are Supramundane; States which are not objects of cankers; States which are associated with cankers; States which are associated with cankers but are not cankers; States which are dissociated from cankers and are not objects of cankers (6).

p. 141

States which are not objects of fetters ... States which are not objects of ties ... States which are not objects of floods ... States which are not objects of bonds ... States which are not objects of hindrances ... (20).

States which are not objects of misapprehensions; States which are associated with misapprehensions; States which are dissociated from misapprehensions and are not objects of misapprehensions; States which have objects are not classified with these states under the same aggregate, under the same base and under the same element.

With how many aggregates, with how many bases and with how many elements are those states associated? With none.

From how many are they dissociated? They are dissociated from 4 aggregates, from 1 base and from 7 elements; partially dissociated from 1 base and from 1 element (4).

454. States which have no objects; States which are not consciousness; States which are dissociated from consciousness; States which are not conjoined with consciousness; States which are generated by consciousness; States which arise together with consciousness; States which arise successively with consciousness; States which are external; States which are derived are not classified with these states under the same aggregate, under the same base and under the same element.

With how many aggregates, with how many bases and with how many elements are those states associated? They are associated with 3 aggregates; partially associated with 1 base and with 1 element.

From how many are they dissociated? They are dissociated from 1 aggregate, from 10 bases and from 10 elements; partially dissociated from 1 base and from 1 element (9).

p. 142 455. States which are not objects of clinging; States which are associated with clinging; States which are associated with clinging but are not clinging; States which are dissociated from clinging and are not objects of clinging; States which are not objects of corruptions; States which are not corrupt; States which are associated with corruptions; States which are corrupt but are not corruptions; States which are associated with corruptions but are not corruptions; States which are dissociated from corruptions and are not objects of corruptions; States which are eradicated by First Path; States which are eradicated by Higher 3 Paths; States together with roots eradicated by First Path; States together with roots eradicated by Higher 3 Paths; States with applied-thought; States with sustained-thought; States with rapture; States which are accompanied by rapture; States which are accompanied by pleasure; States which are accompanied by indifference; States which do not belong to the sensuous plane; States which belong to the fine-material plane; States which belong to the immaterial plane; States which are not included in the round of existences; States which lead out from the round of existences; States which have fixed destiny yielded after decease or after their own occurrence; States which are not with beyond; States which are causes

of lamentation are not classified with these states under the same aggregate, under the same base and under the same element.

With how many aggregates, with how many bases and with how many elements are those states associated? With none.

From how many are they dissociated? They are dissociated from 4 aggregates, from 1 base and from 7 elements; partially dissociated from 1 base and from 1 element (28).

## Mnemonic

Same as [Chapter V \(b\)](#).

## Explanation of the Method and Chart of Chapter XIII

*Subject matter:* Here the states, which are not classified with the states of enquiry under the same aggregate, under the same base and under the same element as given in [Chapter V](#), are now treated under association and dissociation as in [Chapter VI](#). Of the 130 states, which form the subject of this chapter, 16 belong to the internal and 114 to the external states of enquiry.

*How to read the Chart*<sup>1</sup>: Matter aggregate is taken as illustration. Matter aggregate is not classified with these states (consciousness aggregate) under the same aggregate (matter aggregate), under the same base (10 gross bases and cognizable base) and under the same element (10 gross elements and cognizable element). p. 143

With how many aggregates, with how many bases and with how many elements are those states (consciousness aggregate) associated?

They are associated with 3 aggregates (remaining 3 mental aggregates); partially associated with 1 (cognizable) base (52 mental factors) and with 1 (cognizable) element (52 mental factors).

---

<sup>1</sup>See Method of Chapter XI: *Classified in the Association and Dissociation* on page 224.

From how many are they (consciousness aggregate) dissociated? They are dissociated from 1 aggregate (matter aggregate), from 10 bases (10 gross bases) and from 10 elements (10 gross elements); partially dissociated from 1 (cognizable) base (subtle matter 16 and Nibbāna) and from 1 (cognizable) element (subtle matter 16 and Nibbāna).

*The kinds of answers:* There are 2 kinds of answers. The number of states of enquiry having the same answers are given below:

	Question Numbers	States
1.	448 (1), 449 (11), 452 (1), 454 (9)	22
2.	450 (4), 451 (46), 453 (30), 455 (28)	108
	Total:	130

*Note:* Only 130 states of enquiry out of the 257 in [Chapter V](#) are dealt with here. Twenty-two of these are like matter aggregate and 108 are like immaterial becoming. The remaining 127 states of [Chapter V](#) such as feeling aggregate, etc., are excluded because the states, which are not classified with them under the same aggregate, under the same base and under the same element, are not associated.

An example of this is given below with feeling aggregate. Feeling aggregate is not classified with these states (12 gross matter, consciousness aggregate) under the same aggregate (feeling aggregate), under the same base (cognizable base) and under the same element (cognizable element).

With how many aggregates, with how many bases and with how many elements are those states (12 gross matter, consciousness aggregate) associated? Or, from how many are they dissociated? Such questions cannot be answered.

# XIV

## Classified and Unclassified Concerning the Dissociated

### 63 Questions and Answers

#### 1. Aggregates and so on

456. Matter aggregate is dissociated from these states. Under how many aggregates, under how many bases and under how many elements are those states classified? They are classified under 4 aggregates, under 2 bases and under 8 elements. p. 144

Under how many are they not classified? They are not classified under 1 aggregate, under 10 bases and under 10 elements (1).

457. Feeling aggregate is dissociated from these states; Perception aggregate; Mental formation aggregate; Consciousness aggregate; Mind base; Mind faculty is dissociated from these states.

Under how many aggregates, under how many bases and under how many elements are those states classified? They, excluding Nibbāna from the classification of aggregates, are classified under 1 aggregate, under 11 bases and under 11 elements.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not classified under 4 aggregates, under 1 base and under 7 elements (6).

458. Eye base ... Tangible Object base; Eye element ... Tangible

Object element is dissociated from these states. They are classified under 4 aggregates, under 2 bases and under 8 elements.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not classified under 1 aggregate, under 10 bases and under 10 elements (20).

459. Eye consciousness element; Ear consciousness element; Nose consciousness element; Tongue consciousness element; Body consciousness element; Mind element; Mind consciousness element is dissociated from these states. ... They, excluding Nibbāna from the classification of aggregates, are classified under 5 aggregates, under 12 bases and under 17 elements.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not non-classified under any aggregates, not non-classified under any bases; they are not classified under 1 element (7).

## 2. Truths and so on

460. Suffering truth is dissociated from these states. ... They are classified under 4 aggregates, under 2 bases and under 2 elements.

p. 145

Under how many are they not classified? They are not classified under 1 aggregate, under 10 bases and under 16 elements (1).

461. Origin truth; Path truth is dissociated from these states. They, excluding Nibbāna from the classification of aggregates, are classified under 5 aggregates, under 12 bases and under 18 elements.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not non-classified under any aggregates, not non-classified under any bases and not non-classified under any elements (2).

462. Cessation truth; Eye faculty ... Body faculty; Female faculty; Male faculty is dissociated from these states. They are classified under 4 aggregates, under 2 bases and under 8 elements.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not classified under 1 aggregate, under 10 bases and under 10 elements (8).

463. Bodily pleasure faculty; Bodily pain faculty; Mental joy faculty; Grief faculty is dissociated from these states. They, excluding Nibbāna from the classification of aggregates, are classified under 5 aggregates, under 12 bases and under 18 elements.



Under how many are they not classified? They are not non-classified under any aggregates, not non-classified under any bases and not non-classified under any elements (4).

464. Indifference faculty is dissociated from these states. They, excluding Nibbāna from the classification of aggregates, are classified under 5 aggregates, under 12 bases and under 13 elements.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not non-classified under any aggregates, not non-classified under any bases; they are not classified under 5 elements (1).

465. Faith faculty; Energy faculty; Mindfulness faculty; Concentration faculty; Wisdom faculty; I-shall-know-what-I-did-not-know faculty; Higher realization faculty; He-who-has-known faculty; Ignorance; Conditioned by ignorance, Formations are dissociated from these states. They, excluding Nibbāna from the classification of aggregates, are classified under 5 aggregates, under 12 bases and under 18 elements.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not non-classified under any aggregates, not non-classified under any bases and not non-classified under any elements (10).

466. Conditioned by formations, Consciousness; Conditioned by 6 bases, Contact; Conditioned by contact, Feeling is dissociated from these states. They, excluding Nibbāna from the classification | of aggregates, are classified under 1 aggregate, under 11 bases and under 11 elements. p. 146

Under how many are they not classified? They are not classified under 4 aggregates, under 1 base and under 7 elements (3).

467. Conditioned by feeling, Craving; Conditioned by craving, Clinging; Kamma becoming is dissociated from these states. They, excluding Nibbāna from the classification of aggregates, are classified under 5 aggregates, under 12 bases and under 18 elements.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not non-classified under any aggregates, not non-classified under any bases and not non-classified under any elements (3).

468. Rebirth becoming; Percepted becoming; Five-aggregate becoming is dissociated from these states. They are classified under 4 aggregates, under 2 bases and under 3 elements.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not classified under 1 aggregate, under 10 bases and under 15 elements (3).

469. Sensuous becoming is dissociated from these states. They are classified under 4 aggregates, under 2 bases and under 5 elements.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not classified under 1 aggregate, under 10 bases and under 13 elements (1).

470. Fine-material becoming; Non-percepted becoming; One-aggregate becoming; Lamentation is dissociated from these states. They are classified under 4 aggregates, under 2 bases and under 8 elements.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not classified under 1 aggregate, under 10 bases and under 10 elements (4).

471. Immaterial becoming; Neither perception nor non-perception becoming; Four-aggregate becoming; Sorrow; Suffering; Grief; Despair; Application of Mindfulness; Great Effort; Road to psychic power; Jhāna; Illimitables; 5 Faculties; 5 Strengths; 7 Factors of Enlightenment; Noble Eightfold Path is dissociated from these states. They, excluding Nibbāna from the classification of aggregates, are classified under 5 aggregates, under 12 bases and under 18 elements.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not non-classified under any aggregates, not non-classified under any bases and not non-classified under any elements.

### **3. Seven Contact Group**

p. 147 472. Contact; Feeling; Perception; Volition; Consciousness; Attention is dissociated from these states. They, excluding Nibbāna | from the classification of aggregates, are classified under 1 aggregate, under 11 bases and under 11 elements.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not classified under 4 aggregates, under 1 base and under 7 elements (6).

473. Decision is dissociated from these states. They, excluding Nibbāna from the classification of aggregates, are classified under 5 aggregates, under 12 bases and under 17 elements.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not non-

classified under any aggregates, not non-classified under any bases; they are not classified under 1 element (1).

#### 4. Triplets

474. Wholesome states are dissociated from these states. Unwholesome states; States associated with pleasant feeling; States associated with painful feeling are dissociated from these states. They, excluding Nibbāna from the classification of aggregates, are classified under 5 aggregates, under 12 bases and under 18 elements.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not non-classified under any aggregates, not non-classified under any bases and not non-classified under any elements (4).

475. Indeterminate states are dissociated from these states. They are classified under 4 aggregates, under 2 bases and under 2 elements.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not classified under 1 aggregate, under 10 bases and under 16 elements (1).

476. States associated with feeling that is neither painful nor pleasant; Resultant states are dissociated from these states. They, excluding Nibbāna from the classification of aggregates, are classified under 5 aggregates, under 12 bases and under 13 elements.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not non-classified under any aggregates, not non-classified under any bases; they are not classified under 5 elements (2).

477. States producing resultant states; Corrupt and corrupting states are dissociated from these states. They, excluding Nibbāna from the classification of aggregates, are classified under 5 aggregates, under 12 bases and under 18 elements.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not non-classified under any aggregates, not non-classified under any bases and not non-classified under any elements (2).

478. States which are neither resultant nor producing resultant states; States which are not acquired by clinging but favourable to clinging; States which are not acquired by clinging and not favourable to clinging; Not corrupt and not corrupting states are dissociated from

these states. They are classified under 4 aggregates, under 2 bases and under 8 elements.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not classified under 1 aggregate, under 10 bases and under 10 elements (4).

479. States which are acquired by clinging and favourable to clinging are dissociated from these states. They are classified under 4 aggregates, under 2 bases and under 3 elements.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not classified under 1 aggregate, under 10 bases and under 15 elements (1).

480. Not corrupt but corrupting states are dissociated from these states. They are classified under 4 aggregates, under 2 bases and under 2 elements.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not classified under 1 aggregate, under 10 bases and under 16 elements (1).

481. States with applied-thought and sustained-thought are dissociated from these states. They, excluding Nibbāna from the classification of aggregates, are classified under 5 aggregates, under 12 bases and under 17 elements.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not non-classified under any aggregates, not non-classified under any bases; they are not classified under 1 element (1).

482. States without applied-thought but sustained-thought; States accompanied by rapture; States accompanied by pleasure are dissociated from these states. They, excluding Nibbāna from the classification of aggregates, are classified under 5 aggregates, under 12 bases and under 18 elements.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not non-classified under any aggregates, not non-classified under any bases and not non-classified under any elements (3).

483. States without applied-thought and sustained-thought are dissociated from these states. They are classified under 4 aggregates, under 2 bases and under 3 elements.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not classified under 1 aggregate, under 10 bases and under 15 elements (1).

484. States accompanied by indifference are dissociated from these states. They, excluding Nibbāna from the classification of

aggregates, are classified under 5 aggregates, under 12 bases and under 13 elements. p. 149

Under how many are they not classified? They are not non-classified under any aggregates, not non-classified under any bases; they are not classified under 5 elements (1).

485. States eradicated by First Path; States eradicated by Higher 3 Paths; States together with roots eradicated by First Path; States together with roots eradicated by Higher 3 Paths; States leading to rebirth and death; States leading to Nibbāna; States appertaining to Learners; States appertaining to Arahatta; Lofty states are dissociated from these states. They, excluding Nibbāna from the classification of aggregates, are classified under 5 aggregates, under 12 bases and under 18 elements.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not non-classified under any aggregates, not non-classified under any bases and not non-classified under any elements (9).

486. States eradicated neither by First Path nor by Higher 3 Paths; States together with roots eradicated neither by First Path nor by Higher 3 Paths; States neither leading to rebirth and death nor to Nibbāna; States appertaining to neither Learners nor Arahatta; Limited states are dissociated from these states. They are classified under 4 aggregates, under 2 bases and under 2 elements.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not classified under 1 aggregate, under 10 bases and under 16 elements (5).

487. Incomparable states; Exalted states are dissociated from these states. They are classified under 4 aggregates, under 2 bases and under 8 elements.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not classified under 1 aggregate, under 10 bases and under 10 elements (2).

488. States with limited objects are dissociated from these states. They, excluding Nibbāna from the classification of aggregates, are classified under 5 aggregates, under 12 bases and under 12 elements.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not non-classified under any aggregates, not non-classified under any bases; they are not classified under 6 elements (1).

p. 150 489. States with lofty objects; States with incomparable objects; Low states; States with fixed destiny due to wrong views; States with fixed destiny due to right views; States with Path objects; States conditioned by the Path; States dominated by the Path are dissociated from these states. They, excluding Nibbāna from the classification of aggregates, are classified under 5 aggregates, under 12 bases and under 18 elements.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not non-classified under any aggregates, not non-classified under any bases and not non-classified under any elements (8).

490. Medium states; States with no fixed destiny are dissociated from these states. They are classified under 4 aggregates, under 2 bases and under 2 elements.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not classified under 1 aggregate, under 10 bases and under 16 elements (2).

491. States arisen; States not arisen; States bound to arise; Past states; Future states; Present states; Internal states; External states; States both visible and impinging; States invisible but impinging are dissociated from these states. They are classified under 4 aggregates, under 2 bases and under 8 elements.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not classified under 1 aggregate, under 10 bases and under 10 elements (10).

492. States with past object; States with future object; States with internal object; States with external object are dissociated from these states. They, excluding Nibbāna from the classification of aggregates, are classified under 5 aggregates, under 12 bases and under 18 elements.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not non-classified under any aggregates, not non-classified under any bases and not non-classified under any elements (4).

493. States with present object; States with internal and external object are dissociated from these states. They, excluding Nibbāna from the classification of aggregates, are classified under 5 aggregates, under 12 bases and under 12 elements.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not non-

classified under any aggregates, not non-classified under any bases; they are not classified under 6 elements (2).

## 5. Couplets

494. States which are roots; States which have associated roots; States which are associated with roots; States which are roots and also have associated roots; States which have associated roots but are not roots; States which are roots and also associated with roots; States which are associated with roots but are not roots; States which are not roots but have associated roots are dissociated from these states. They, excluding Nibbāna from the classification of aggregates, are classified under 5 aggregates, under 12 bases and under 18 elements. p. 151

Under how many are they not classified? They are not non-classified under any aggregates, not non-classified under any bases and not non-classified under any elements (8).

495. States which have no roots; States which are dissociated from roots; States which are neither roots nor have associated roots are dissociated from these states. They are classified under 4 aggregates, under 2 bases and under 2 elements.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not classified under 1 aggregate, under 10 bases and under 16 elements (3).

496. States not arising from 4 causes; States not conditioned by 4 causes; States with visibility; States with impinging; States which have physical change; States which are Supramundane are dissociated from these states. They are classified under 4 aggregates, under 2 bases and under 8 elements.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not classified under 1 aggregate, under 10 bases and under 10 elements (6).

497. States which are mundane are dissociated from these states. They are classified under 4 aggregates, under 2 bases and under 2 elements.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not classified under 1 aggregate, under 10 bases and under 16 elements (1).

498. States which are cankers; States which are associated with cankers; States which are both cankers and objects of cankers; States

which are both cankers and associated with cankers; States which are associated with cankers but are not cankers are dissociated from these states. They, excluding Nibbāna from the classification of aggregates, are classified under 5 aggregates, under 12 bases and under 18 elements.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not non-classified under any aggregates, not non-classified under any bases and not non-classified under any elements (5).

499. States which are objects of cankers; States which are dissociated from cankers; States which are objects of cankers but are not cankers; States which are dissociated from cankers but are objects of cankers are dissociated from these states. They are classified under 4 aggregates, under 2 bases and under 2 elements.

p. 152 Under how many are they not classified? They are not classified under 1 aggregate, under 10 bases and under 16 elements (4).

500. States which are not objects of cankers; States which are dissociated from cankers and are not objects of cankers are dissociated from these states. They are classified under 4 aggregates, under 2 bases and under 8 elements.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not classified under 1 aggregate, under 10 bases and under 10 elements (2).

501. States which are fetters ...States which are ties ...States which are floods ...States which are bonds ...States which are hindrances<sup>1</sup> ...States which are misapprehensions; States which are associated with misapprehensions; States which are both misapprehensions and objects of misapprehensions are dissociated from these states. They, excluding Nibbāna from the classification of aggregates, are classified under 5 aggregates, under 12 bases and under 18 elements.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not non-classified under any aggregates, not non-classified under any bases and not non-classified under any elements (58).

502. States which are objects of misapprehensions; States which are dissociated from misapprehensions; States which are objects of

---

<sup>1</sup>These should be taken just as cankers above.



misapprehensions but are not misapprehensions; States which are dissociated from misapprehensions but are objects of misapprehensions are dissociated from these states. They are classified under 4 aggregates, under 2 bases and under 2 elements.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not classified under 1 aggregate, under 10 bases and under 16 elements (4).

503. States which are not objects of misapprehensions; States which are dissociated from misapprehensions and are not objects of misapprehensions are dissociated from these states. They are classified under 4 aggregates, under 2 bases and under 8 elements.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not classified under 1 aggregate, under 10 bases and under 10 elements (2).

504. States which have objects; States which are consciousness; States which are mental factors; States which are associated with consciousness; States which are conjoined with consciousness; States which are conjoined with and are generated by consciousness; States which are conjoined with, are generated by and arise together with consciousness; States which are conjoined with, are generated by and arise successively with consciousness are dissociated from these states. They, excluding Nibbāna from the classification of aggregates, are classified under 1 aggregate, under 11 bases and under 11 elements. p. 153

Under how many are they not classified? They are not classified under 4 aggregates, under 1 base and under 7 elements (8).

505. States which have no objects; States which are dissociated from consciousness; States which are not conjoined with consciousness; States which are derived; States which are not acquired by clinging are dissociated from these states. They are classified under 4 aggregates, under 2 bases and under 8 elements.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not classified under 1 aggregate, under 10 bases and under 10 elements (5).

506. States which are acquired by clinging are dissociated from these states. They are classified under 4 aggregates, under 2 bases and under 3 elements.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not classified under 1 aggregate, under 10 bases and under 15 elements (1).

507. States which are clinging ... States which are corruptions; States which are corrupt; States which are associated with corruptions; States which are both corruptions and objects of corruptions; States which are both corruptions and corrupt; States which are corrupt but are not corruptions; States which are both corruptions and associated with corruptions; States which are associated with corruptions but are not corruptions are dissociated from these states. They, excluding Nibbāna from the classification of aggregates, are classified under 5 aggregates, under 12 bases and under 18 elements.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not non-classified under any aggregates, not non-classified under any bases and not non-classified under any elements (19).

508. States which are objects of corruptions; States which are not corrupt; States which are dissociated from corruptions; States which are objects of corruptions but are not corruptions; States which are dissociated from corruptions but are objects of corruptions are dissociated from these states. They are classified under 4 aggregates, under 2 bases and under 2 elements.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not classified under 1 aggregate, under 10 bases and under 16 elements (5).

p. 154 509. States which are not objects of corruptions; States which are dissociated from corruptions and are not objects of corruptions are dissociated from these states. They are classified under 4 aggregates, under 2 bases and under 8 elements.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not classified under 1 aggregate, under 10 bases and under 10 elements (2).

510. States eradicated by First Path; States eradicated by Higher 3 Paths; States together with roots eradicated by First Path; States together with roots eradicated by Higher 3 Paths are dissociated from these states. They, excluding Nibbāna from the classification of aggregates, are classified under 5 aggregates, under 12 bases and under 18 elements.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not non-classified under any aggregates, not non-classified under any bases and not non-classified under any elements (4).

511. States not eradicated by First Path; States not eradicated by

Higher 3 Paths; States together with roots not eradicated by First Path; States together with roots not eradicated by Higher 3 Paths are dissociated from these states. They are classified under 4 aggregates, under 2 bases and under 2 elements.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not classified under 1 aggregate, under 10 bases and under 16 elements (4).

512. States with applied-thought; States with sustained-thought are dissociated from these states. They, excluding Nibbāna from the classification of aggregates, are classified under 5 aggregates, under 12 bases and under 17 elements.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not non-classified under any aggregates, not non-classified under any bases; they are not classified under 1 element (2).

513. States with rapture; States which are accompanied by rapture; States which are accompanied by pleasure are dissociated from these states. They, excluding Nibbāna from the classification of aggregates, are classified under 5 aggregates, under 12 bases and under 18 elements.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not non-classified under any aggregates, not non-classified under any bases and not non-classified under any elements (3).

514. States which are accompanied by indifference are dissociated from these states. They, excluding Nibbāna from the classification of aggregates, are classified under 5 aggregates, under 12 bases and under 13 elements.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not | non-classified under any aggregates, not non-classified under any bases; they are not classified under 5 elements (1). p. 155

515. States which belong to the sensuous plane; States which are included in the round of existences; States which are with beyond are dissociated from these states. They are classified under 4 aggregates, under 2 bases and under 2 elements.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not classified under 1 aggregate, under 10 bases and under 16 elements (3).

516. States which do not belong to the sensuous plane; States which are not included in the round of existences; States which are

not with beyond are dissociated from these states. They are classified under 4 aggregates, under 2 bases and under 8 elements.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not classified under 1 aggregate, under 10 bases and under 10 elements (3).

517. States which belong to the fine-material plane; States which belong to the immaterial plane; States which lead out from the round of existences; States which have fixed destiny yielded after decease or after their own occurrence; States which are causes of lamentation are dissociated from these states. They, excluding Nibbāna from the classification of aggregates, are classified under 5 aggregates, under 12 bases and under 18 elements.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not non-classified under any aggregates, not non-classified under any bases and not non-classified under any elements (5).

518. States which do not belong to the fine-material plane; States which do not belong to the immaterial plane; States which do not lead out from the round of existences; States which have not fixed destiny as above; States which are not causes of lamentation are dissociated from these states.

Under how many aggregates, under how many bases and under how many elements are those states classified? They are classified under 4 aggregates, under 2 bases and under 2 elements.

Under how many are they not classified? They are not classified under 1 aggregate, under 10 bases and under 16 elements (5).

## **Mnemonic**

Same as Chapter [VIII](#).

# Charts

Aggregates, Bases and Elements							
Aggregates 5	Matter Aggregate	Bases 12	Elements 18	Gross Matter 12	Sensitive Eye	1	
					Sensitive Ear	1	
					Sensitive Nose	1	
					Sensitive Tongue	1	
					Sensitive Body	1	
					Visible Object	1	
					Sound	1	
					Odour	1	
					Taste	1	
					Tangible Object (E., H., W.) <sup>1</sup>	3	
					Subtle Matter	16	
					Cognizable Element	Cognizable Base	Mind Base
	Perception Aggregate	1					
	Mental Formations Aggregate	50					
	Aggregate Freed	Nibbāna	Nibbāna 1				
	Consciousness Aggregate	Mind Base	Mind Base	Elements 18	Consciousness 89	Eye Cons. Element	2
Ear Cons. Element						2	
Nose Cons. Element						2	
Tongue Cons. Element						2	
Body Cons. Element						2	
Mind Element						3	
Mind Cons. Element						76	

<sup>1</sup> E. = Earth, H. = Heat, W. = Wind

	42 States	These States*	Classified		Unclassified		They = Those States*
			A	B	B	E	
171	Eye Base ... Taste Base, Eye E... Taste E	Rem. mat. 27	Matter		Eye ... Taste	Rem. 27 <sup>1</sup>	
	Tangible Base, Tangible Element	Rem. mat. 25	Matter		Tangible	25 <sup>2</sup>	
172	Eye Cons. E ... Mind E, Mind Cons. E	Rem. 6 Cons. E	Cons.	Mind	Eye ... Mind, Mind Cons.		6 Cons. E <sup>8</sup>
173	Eye Fac. ... Body Fac.	Rem. 27	Matter		Eye ... Body	27 <sup>3</sup>	
	Female fac. ... Male fac.	Gr. 12			Cog.	12 <sup>4</sup>	
174	Non-percepted becoming, One-aggregate becoming	Gr. 12 ex Vis.	Matter		Vis. Cog.		11
175	Lamentation	Rem. Matter 27	Matter		Sound	27 <sup>5</sup>	
	States both vis. and imp.	1			Vis.	27 <sup>6</sup>	
176	States invisible but impinging	Vis. 1, Sub. 16	Matter		Gr: 10 ex. Vis		Vis. 1, Sub 16
177	States with visibility	1 Rem. Matter 27	Matter		Vis	27 <sup>7</sup>	
178	States with impinging	1 Sub. 16	Matter		Gr: 10		Sub. 16 <sup>6</sup>
	States which are derived	1 E., H., W.	Matter		Gr. 10, ex. Tan., Cog.		E., H., W. <sup>10</sup>
	42				Unclassified Aggregates	4	4
					Unclassified Bases	2	11
					Unclassified Elements	8	12
					Total 42	30	7

Unclassified aggregates, bases and elements

- Abbreviations**  
 Rem. = remaining  
 Mat. = matter  
 ex. = excluding  
 Vis. = visible object  
 Fac. = faculty  
 Tan. = tangible object  
 Cog. = cognizable  
 Gr. = gross matter  
 Imp. = impinging  
 Sub. = subtle matter
- Aggregates**  
 4 = Mental Aggregates  
 †4 = Matter, feeling, perception and mental formation aggregates
- Bases**  
 1, 3, 2 = Eye and mind  
 2, 2 = Tangible and mind  
 4, 2 = Mind and cognizable  
 5, 2 = Sound and mind  
 6, 7, 2 = Visible and mind  
 8, 11 = Gross 10, cognizable 1  
 9, 11 = Gross 10, mind 1  
 10, 11 = Gross 10 excluding tangible = 9, mind 1, cognizable 1  
 3 = Visible, mind, cognizable  
 10 = Gross 10 excluding visible = 9, mind 1
- Elements**  
 1, 3, 8 = Eye 1, Consciousness 7  
 2, 8 = Tangible 1, Consciousness 7  
 4, 8 = Consciousness 7, Cognizable 1  
 5, 8 = Sound 1, Consciousness 7  
 6, 7, 8 = Visible 1, Consciousness 7  
 12 = Gross 10, eye cons. 1, Cognizable 1  
 9 = Visible 1, Cons. 7, Cognizable 1  
 16 = 18 excluding visible and cognizable  
 9, 17 = 18 excluding cognizable  
 10, 17 = 18 excluding Tangible
- \*Shows that the states taken as "these" and "those" are the same.

		These states*				Unclassified aggregate	Classified		They = Those States*
		Subtle matter	Feeling	Perception	Mental Formation		Cog. base	Cog. element	
90 States									
179	Feeling aggregate Perception aggregate	1	"	"	"	Feeling	"	=	
	Mental formation aggregate, Origin truth, Path truth	1	"	"	"	P.	"	=	
180	Cessation truth	3	"	"	"	M.-F.	"	=	
181	Life faculty	1	"	"	"	O	"	=	
	Female faculty, Male faculty	2	"	"	"	M., M.-F.	"	=	
182	Bodily pleasure faculty ... Indifference faculty Faith faculty ... Conditioned by 6 bases, Contact Conditioned by feeling, craving ... Kamma becoming	5 11 1	"	"	"	Matter Feeling M.-F. Feeling	" " " "	 = = =	
	Birth, Ageing, Death	3	"	"	"	M.-F.	"	=	
183	Birth, Ageing, Death Jhana	3 1	"	"	"	M., M.-F. F., M.-F.	" "	 =	
	Sorrow, Suffering, Grief Despair, Application of mindfulness ... Contact	3 9	"	"	"	Feeling M.-F.	" "	 =	
184	Feeling Perception	1 1	"	"	"	Feeling P	" "	 =	
	Volition ... States which are roots and also associated with roots	6	"	"	"	M.-F.	"	=	
185	States not arising from 4 causes, States not conditioned by 4 causes	2	"	"	"	O	"	=	
186	States which are cankers ...	3	"	"	"	M.-F.	"	=	
187	States which are fetters ...	17	"	"	"	M.-F.	"	=	
188	States which are mental factors ...	6	"	"	"	F., P., M.-F.	"	=	
189	States which arise together with consciousness ...	2	"	"	"	M., F., P., M.-F.	"	=	
190	States which are clinging ... States which are both corruptions and as-sociated with corruptions	7	"	"	"	M.-F.	"	=	
		90							
			Classified aggregates						
			Classified bases						
			Classified elements						
			Total = 90						
							74	3	
								5	
								6	
								2	

Abbreviations

- O = Nibbāna
- M = Matter
- F = Feeling
- P = Perception
- M.-F. = Mental formation

\*Shows that the states taken as "these" and "those" are the same



69 States*		1st these states*				Non-lamented audible object born of mind and audible object born of temperature			Classified			Those states*			2nd these states			Classified			Those states		
		Rem. feeling fac. 4	Rem. M.-F.	Rem. Sub 15		Aggregate	Base	Element	Aggregate	Base	Element	Aggregate	Base	Element	Aggregate	Base	Element	Aggregate	Base	Element			
191	Origin truth	1	49			M.-F.	Cog.	Cog.	49				M.-F.	Cog.	Cog.								
	Path truth	1	50			"	"	"	50				"	"	"	"	"	"	"	"	"		
	Female fac., Male fac.	2		"		Mat.	"	"	15				Mat.	"	"	"	"	"	"	"	"		
	Bodily pleasure fac. ... Indifference fac.	5	"			F.	"	"	4				F.	"	"	"	"	"	"	"	"		
192	Faith fac. ... Kamma becoming	14	49			M.-F.	"	"	49				M.-F.	"	"	"	"	"	"	"	"		
	Sorrow	1	"			F.	"	"	4				F.	"	"	"	"	"	"	"	"		
	Lamentation	1	"			Mat.	So.	So.					Mat.	So.	So.	So.	So.	So.	So.	So.	So.		
	Suffering, Grief	2	"			F.	Cog.	Cog.	4				F.	Cog.	Cog.	Cog.	Cog.	Cog.	Cog.	Cog.	Cog.		
Despair ... Attention	12	49			M.-F.	"	"	49				M.-F.	"	"	"	"	"	"	"	"	"		
States which are corruptions ... both corruptions and associated with corruptions	30	44			"	"	"	44				"	"	"	"	"	"	"	"	"	"		
		69																					
						Classified aggregates			1			Classified aggregates			1			1			1		
						Bases			1			Bases			1			1			1		
						Elements			1			Elements			1			1			1		
						Total			69			Total			69			69			69		

Abbreviations  
So. = Sound



	Associated			Partially associated			Dissociated			Partially dissociated	
	Remaining mental aggregates	Mind base 1	Cons. Element 7	Mental formation 1	Cog. B. 1, Cog. E. 1	Mental factors	Mental A. 4, Mind B. 1	M. aggregate 1, Gr. B. 10	Elements	Cog. B. 1, Cog. E. 1, mental factors 52	Cog. B. 1, Cog. E. 1, subtle 16, Nibbāna
228	Matter aggregate										
229	Feeling aggregate	3	1	7		1, 1	Ex. F. 51		1, 10	Gr. 10	1, 1
230	Consciousness aggregate ...	3				"	52		"	Gr. 10	"
234	Eye consciousness element ...	3					Primary 7		"	Ex. Eye-C. and Cog. = 16	"
235	Origin truth ...	3	"	Md.-C. 1	1	"	Ex. origin 21		"	Ex. Md.-C. and Cog. = 16	"
238	Bodily pleasure faculty ...	3	"	Body 1		"	Ex. F. = Primary 6		"	Ex. Body and Cog. = 16	"
239	Indifference faculty	3	"	Ex. Body = 6		"	46		"	Gr. 10, Body 1 = 11	"
242	Conditioned by 6 bases, Contact	3	"	7	1	"	Ex. contact 51		"	Gr. 10	"
245	Fine material becoming						x		x	Nose, Tongue, body = 3	
246	Immaterial becoming						x		"	Ex. Md.-C. and Cog. = 16	"
250	Road to psychic power	F.P. = 2			"	"	Ex. Intention, energy, wisdom = 33		"	Ex. Md.-C. and Cog. = 16	"
251	Jhāna	P.C. = 2	"	Md.-C 1	1	"	Ex. Jhānic factors = 33		"	Ex. Md.-C. and Cog. = 16	"
256	Decision	3	"	Md., Md.-C = 2	1	"	Ex. Decision, doubt = 50		"	Gr. 10, five-fold C. 5 = 15	"
258	States associated with pleasant feeling ...	F. 1				"	Pleasant F. 63		"	Ex. Body, Md.-C. and Cog. = 15	"
259	... Neither painful nor pleasant	F. 1				"	Indifference F. 55		"	Gr. 10, Body = 11	"
260	Resultant states						x		"	Gr. 10	"
262	... Neither resultant nor producing resultant ...						x		x	Fivefold cons. 5	
263	Not acquired by clinging and not favourable to clinging ...						x		x	7 Cons. ex. Md.-C = 6	
264	With applied thought and sustained thought				1	"	Applied, sustained = 2		"	Gr. 10, five-fold C. 5 = 15	"
265	Without applied thought but sustained thought				1	"	Sustained 1		"	Ex. Md.-C. and Cog. = 16	"
266	Without applied thought and sustained thought						x		x	Mind 1	
292	States which are mental factors	C. 1	"	7					"	Gr. 10	"

	Associated with these states	Dissociated from these states		Dissociated	Partially dissociated
37 States	Rem. mental. A.	Mental A.	Matter, Nibbāna	Mental A. 1, Md.-B. 1	Cog. B., Cog. E., Mental factors. 52
306	Feeling aggregate	These states		" 7	"
	Cons. aggregate			" 7	"
307	Eye cons. element	6 cons. E. and mental factors	"	x Eye cons. E. 1	
311	Decision	Primary mental factors 7	"	x Mind E. 1	
		Cons. 78, 52 mental factors ex. decision, doubt = 50	"		
313	States with applied-thought and sustained-thought	Cons. without applied and sustained-thought	"	x Mind E. 1	
309	Indifference faculty	Bodily pleasure, Bodily pain, Mental joy, Grief cons. and mental factors	"	x Eye, Ear, Nose, Tongue and Mind E. = 5	
312	Neither painful nor pleasant	Indifference F.	"	x "	
		States + these states	2nd. these states		

(CHAPTER VIII AND CHAPTER XIV)  
Method of Chapter VIII: Dissociated and Associated  
and

Method of Chapter XIV: Classified and Unclassified Concerning the Dissociated

324 States	Dissociated from these states*		Associated	Classified			Unclassified			
	M <sub>1</sub> , Nibbāna	Mental aggregates 4		With none	A	B	E	A	B	E
456	Matter aggregate (317)	Mental aggregate 4	x	4	2	8	1	10	10	
457	Feeling aggregate ..(318) ..		x	1*	11	11	4	1	7	
459	Eye consciousness element ...	Remaining 6 cons. elements and mental factors	x	5*	12	17	0	0	1	
460	Suffering truth	Supramundane consciousness 8, mental factors 36	x	4	2	2	1	10	16	
461	Origin truth ...	Hate rooted, delusion rooted, wholesome, resultant, inoperative consciousness and mental factors	x	5*	12	18	0	0	0	
464	Indifference faculty	Bodily pleasure, bodily pain, mental joy, grief consciousness and mental factors	x	5*	12	13	0	0	5	
468	Rebirth becoming ...	Wholesome, unwholesome, fruition, inoperative consciousness and mental factors	x	4	2	3	1	10	15	
469	Sensous becoming	Fine material becoming which is mere cons. and mental factors, immaterial becoming, wholesome, unwholesome, Fruition, inoperative cons. and mental factors	x	4	2	5	1	10	13	
488	States with limited objects	Lofly objects, incomparable objects and concept objects	x	5*	12	12	0	0	6	

	Associated with these states*	Those states		Associated	Partially associated	Classified†		
		1st. These states	2nd. These states					
319	Feeling aggregate ... Consciousness aggregate ...	Cons. 89, mental factors 52 ex. feeling = 51 Mental factors 52	Those states = They	Mind base 1	M.-F. aggregate	A	B	E
320	Eye consciousness element ... Origin truth ...	Primary mental factors 7 Greed rooted cons. 8, mental factors 22 ex. greed = 21	Rem. mental aggregates	Cons. elements 7	Cog. base 1 Cog. element 1 mental factors	3	3	1
321	Bodily pleasure faculty ...	Bodily pleasure cons. 1, primary mental factors 7 ex. feeling = 6	Those states = They	Mind cons. 1	M.-F. aggregate	3	3	1
322	Indifference faculty ...	Indf. accompanied cons. 55, mental factor = 46	Those states = They	Mind cons. 1	M.-F. aggregate	3	3	1
323	Conditioned by 6 bases, contact	Cons. 89, mental factors 52 ex. contact = 51	Those states = They	Mind cons. 1	M.-F. aggregate	3	3	1
324	Road to psychic power	Mental factors 36 ex. intention, energy and wisdom = 33	Those states = They	Mind cons. 1	M.-F. aggregate	3	3	1
325	Jhana	Lofty cons. 27, supramundane cons. 8, mental factors 38 ex. jhanic factors = 33	Those states = They	Mind cons. 1	M.-F. aggregate	3	3	1
326	Decision	78 cons. associated with decision, mental factors 52 ex. decision and doubt = 50	Those states = They	Mind cons. 1	M.-F. aggregate	3	3	1
327	States associated with pleasant feeling ...	Pleasant feeling 63	Those states = They	Mind cons. 1	M.-F. aggregate	3	3	1
328	States with applied-thought and sustained-thought ...	Applied-thought and sustained-thought	Those states = They	Mind cons. 1	M.-F. aggregate	3	3	1
329	Mental factors ...	Consciousness 89	Those states = They	Mind cons. 1	M.-F. aggregate	3	3	1

†The remaining are unclassified aggregates, bases and elements.

250 States	Dissociated from these states (1st)		Dissociated from these states (2nd)		Those states = they	Dissociated			Partially dissociated
	Mental aggregate	Matter; Nibbana	Mental aggregate, matter, Nibbana	Those states = they		Aggregate	Base	Element	
353 Matter aggregate	Mental aggregate 4	"	Mat. 28, Nibbana	Those states = they	4	Mind 1	7 Consciousness	"	" sub, Nibbana
354 Feeling aggregate ...			Mental A. 4		M.1	Gr. 10	Gr. 10		"
356 Eye cons. element ...	6 cons. element and mental factors 52		Eye cons. E., mental factors 7		M.1	Gr. 10	Gr. 10, 6 cons. E. 6 = 16		"
360 Indifference faculty	Bodily pleasure, bodily pain, mental joy, grief cons. and mental factors 51		Indifference accompanied cons. 55, mental factors 46		"	"	Gr. 10, Body E. 1 = 11		"
364 Fine-material becoming	Sensuous becoming and im-material becoming which are cons. and mental factors, wholesome, unwholesome, fruition, inoperative		Fine-material becoming		0	0	Nose, tongue and body E. = 3		
368 Decision	2 x 5 cons., doubt accompanied cons. and mental factors 15	"	89 cons. ex. 2 x 5 cons. and doubt, mental factors 51	2nd these states	M.1	Gr. 10	Gr. 10, cons. element 5 = 15		"
372 Resultant states ...	Wholesome, unwholesome, inoperative cons. and mental factors	"	Resultant cons. and mental factors 36		M.1	Gr. 10	Gr. 10		"
374 Neither resultant nor producing resultant states ...	Wholesome, unwholesome, resultant cons. and mental factors 52		Neither resultant nor producing resultant states		0	0	Cons. Element 5		
375 Not acquired by clinging and not favourable to clinging	Mundane cons. 81, mental factors 52		Supramundane cons. 8, mental factors 36 and Nibbana		0	0	7 cons. element ex. mind cons. E. = 6		
378 Without applied-thought and sustained-thought	With applied-thought and sustained-thought and without applied-thought but sustained-thought		Without applied-thought and sustained-thought		0	0	Mind element 1		





